



# M5100 Series

---

## User's Guide

**Important:** Click [here](#) before using this guide.

**October 2014**

**www.lexmark.com**

---

Machine type(s):

4063

Model(s):

29E, 49E, 69E

# Contents

- Safety information.....5**
- Overview.....7**
  - Using this guide.....7
  - Finding information about the printer.....7
- Selecting a location for the printer.....9**
- Additional printer setup.....11**
  - Installing internal options.....11
  - Installing hardware options.....27
  - Attaching cables.....31
  - Setting up the printer software.....33
  - Networking.....34
  - Verifying printer setup.....39
- Using M5155 and M5163.....40**
  - Learning about the printer.....40
  - Setting up and using the home screen applications.....46
  - Loading paper and specialty media.....50
  - Printing.....69
  - Managing your printer.....75
- Using M5170.....84**
  - Learning about the printer.....84
  - Setting up and using the home screen applications.....91
  - Loading paper and specialty media.....95
  - Printing.....115
  - Managing your printer.....121
- Paper and specialty media guide.....131**
  - Using specialty media.....131
  - Paper guidelines.....132
  - Supported paper sizes, types, and weights.....136

<b>Understanding the printer menus.....</b>	<b>141</b>
Menu list.....	141
Paper menu.....	142
Reports menu.....	153
Network/Ports menu.....	154
Security menu.....	167
Settings menu.....	171
Help menu.....	197
<b>Saving money and the environment.....</b>	<b>199</b>
Adjusting the brightness of the printer display.....	199
Saving paper and toner.....	199
Adjusting Sleep mode.....	200
Recycling.....	200
<b>Maintaining the printer.....</b>	<b>202</b>
Ordering supplies.....	202
Storing supplies.....	204
Replacing supplies.....	204
Cleaning printer parts.....	210
Moving the printer.....	211
<b>Clearing jams.....</b>	<b>214</b>
Avoiding jams.....	214
Understanding jam messages and locations.....	216
[x]-page jam, lift front cover to remove cartridge. [200–201].....	218
[x]-page jam, open upper rear door. [202].....	221
[x]-page jam, open upper and lower rear door. [231–234].....	222
[x]-page jam, remove standard bin jam. [203].....	224
[x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [235–239].....	224
[x]-page jam, open tray [x]. [24x].....	226
[x]-page jam, clear manual feeder [250].....	227
[x]-page jam, remove paper, open stapler door. Leave paper in bin. [455–457].....	228
[x]-page jam, remove paper, open finisher rear door. Leave paper in bin. [451].....	231
[x]-page jam, remove paper, open expander rear door. Leave paper in bin. [41y.xx].....	232
[x]-page jam, remove paper, open mailbox rear door. Leave paper in bin. [43y.xx].....	233

<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>235</b>
Understanding the printer messages.....	235
Solving printer problems.....	252
Solving home screen application problems.....	286
Embedded Web Server does not open.....	286
Contacting customer support.....	287
<b>Notices.....</b>	<b>288</b>
Product information.....	288
Edition notice.....	288
Power consumption.....	292
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>305</b>

# Safety information

Connect the power cord directly to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Do not use this product with extension cords, multioutlet power strips, multioutlet extenders, or other types of surge or UPS devices. The power rating capacity of these types of accessories can be easily overloaded by a laser printer and may result in poor printer performance, property damage, or potential fire.

Do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

This product uses a printing process that heats the print media, and the heat may cause the media to release emissions. You must understand the section in your operating instructions that discusses the guidelines for selecting print media to avoid the possibility of harmful emissions.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer.
- If two or more optional finishers are installed, then remove the finishers individually from the printer.

**Notes:**

- Make sure to remove the topmost finisher first.
- To remove the finisher, hold the finisher on both sides, and then lift the latches to unlock the finisher.
- If the printer does not have a caster base but is configured with optional trays, then remove the trays.  
**Note:** Slide the latch on the right side of the optional tray toward the front of the tray until it *clicks* into place.
- Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it.
- Make sure your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Make sure there is adequate clearance around the printer.
- Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a service representative.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as a power cord, a fax feature or USB cable, during a lightning storm.

 **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using multiple input options. If you purchased a printer with a similar configuration, then you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

**SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

# Overview

## Using this guide

This *User's Guide* provides general and specific information on using the printer models that are listed on the cover page.

The following chapters contain information applicable to all printer models:

- [Safety information](#)
- [Selecting a location for the printer](#)
- [Additional printer setup](#)
- [Paper and specialty media guide](#)
- [Understanding printer menus](#)
- [Saving money and the environment](#)
- [Maintaining the printer](#)
- [Clearing jams](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)

To find instructions for your printer:

- Use the table of contents.
- Use the Search function or the Find toolbar of your application to search for page content.

## Finding information about the printer

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Initial setup instructions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connecting the printer</li> <li>• Installing the printer software</li> </ul>	Setup documentation—The setup documentation came with the printer and is also available at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> .
Additional setup and instructions for using the printer: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selecting and storing paper and specialty media</li> <li>• Loading paper</li> <li>• Configuring printer settings</li> <li>• Viewing and printing documents and photos</li> <li>• Setting up and using the printer software</li> <li>• Configuring the printer on a network</li> <li>• Caring for and maintaining the printer</li> <li>• Troubleshooting and solving problems</li> </ul>	<i>User's Guide</i> and <i>Quick Reference Guide</i> —The guides are available on the <i>Documentation CD</i> .  <b>Note:</b> These guides are also available in other languages.
Information on setting up and configuring the accessibility features of your printer.	<i>Lexmark Accessibility Guide</i> —This guide is available at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> .

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Help using the printer software	<p>Windows or Mac Help—Open a printer software program or application, and then click <b>Help</b>.</p> <p>Click  to view context-sensitive information.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Help is automatically installed with the printer software.</li> <li>• The printer software is located in the printer program folder or on the desktop, depending on your operating system.</li> </ul>
<p>The latest supplemental information, updates, and customer support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Documentation</li> <li>• Driver downloads</li> <li>• Live chat support</li> <li>• E-mail support</li> <li>• Voice support</li> </ul>	<p>Lexmark support Web site— <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a></p> <p><b>Note:</b> Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site.</p> <p>Support telephone numbers and hours of operation for your country or region can be found on the support Web site or on the printed warranty that came with your printer.</p> <p>Record the following information (located on the store receipt and at the back of the printer), and have it ready when you contact customer support so that they may serve you faster:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Machine Type number</li> <li>• Serial number</li> <li>• Date purchased</li> <li>• Store where purchased</li> </ul>
Warranty information	<p>Warranty information varies by country or region:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>In the U.S.</b>—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with this printer, or go to <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a>.</li> <li>• <b>In other countries and regions</b>—See the printed warranty that came with this printer.</li> </ul>

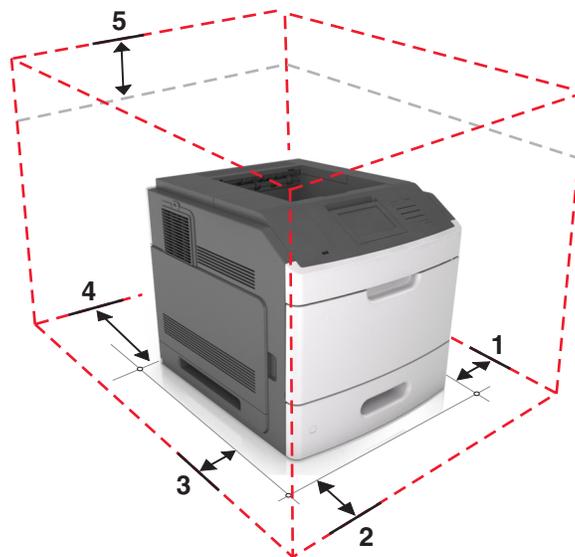
# Selecting a location for the printer

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

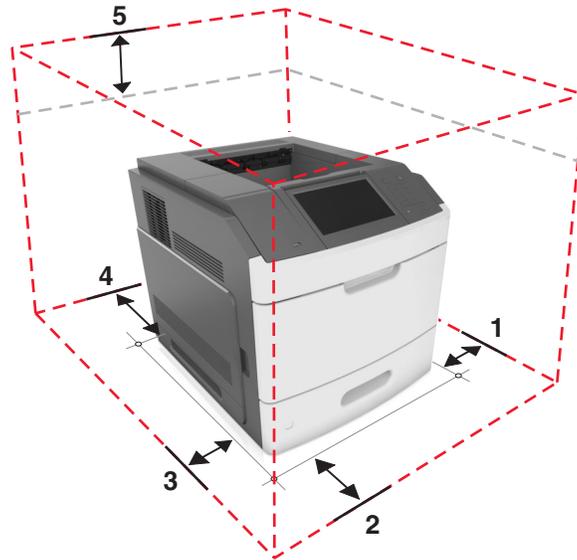
When selecting a location for the printer, leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors. If you plan to install any hardware options, then leave enough room for them also. It is important to:

- Set up the printer near a properly grounded and easily accessible electrical outlet.
- Make sure airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard or the CEN Technical Committee 156 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
  - Clean, dry, and free of dust.
  - Away from stray staples and paper clips.
  - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators.
  - Free from direct sunlight and humidity extremes.
- Observe the recommended temperatures and avoid fluctuations:

Ambient temperature	15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F)
Storage temperature	-40 to 60°C (-40 to 140°F)



1	Right side	305 mm (12 in.)
2	Front	508 mm (20 in.)
3	Left side	305 mm (12 in.)
4	Rear	305 mm (12 in.)
5	Top	115 mm (4.5 in.)



<b>1</b>	Right side	305 mm (12 in.)
<b>2</b>	Front	508 mm (20 in.)
<b>3</b>	Left side	305 mm (12 in.)
<b>4</b>	Rear	305 mm (12 in.)
<b>5</b>	Top	115 mm (4.5 in.)

# Additional printer setup

## Installing internal options

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

## Available internal options

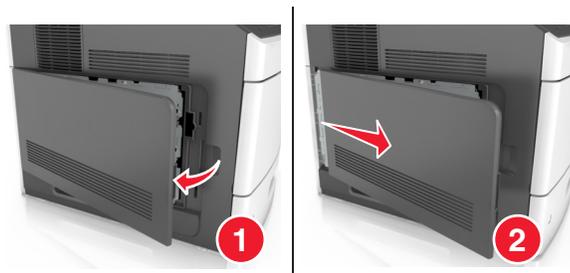
- Memory card
  - DDR3 DIMM
  - Flash memory
    - Fonts
    - Firmware cards
      - Forms and Bar Code
      - PRESCRIBE
      - IPDS
- Printer hard disk
- Lexmark™ Internal Solutions Ports (ISP)
  - Parallel 1284-B interface
  - MarkNet™ N8350 802.11 b/g/n wireless printer server
  - RS-232-C serial interface

## Accessing the controller board

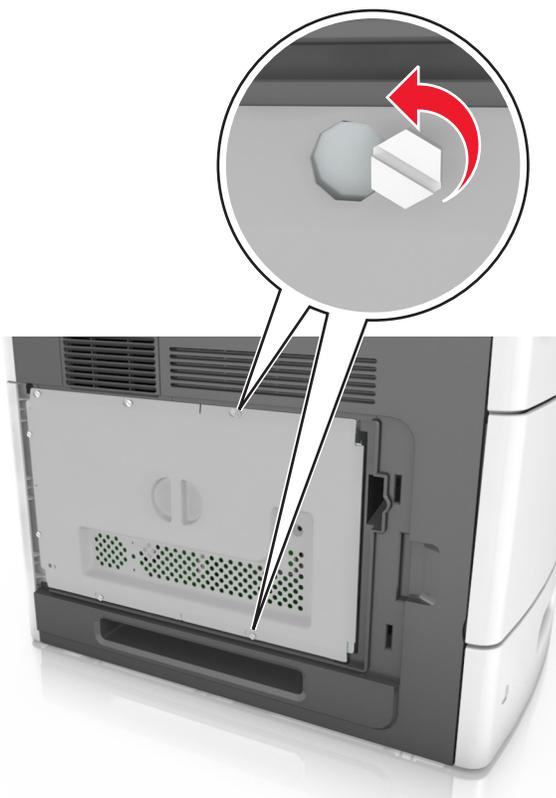
**Note:** This task requires a flat-head screwdriver.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

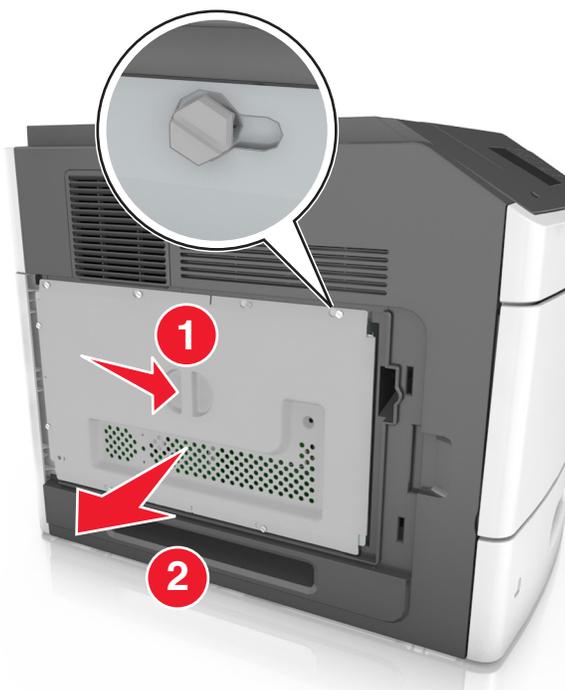
- 1 Remove the controller board access cover.



2 Using a screwdriver, loosen the screws on the controller board shield.

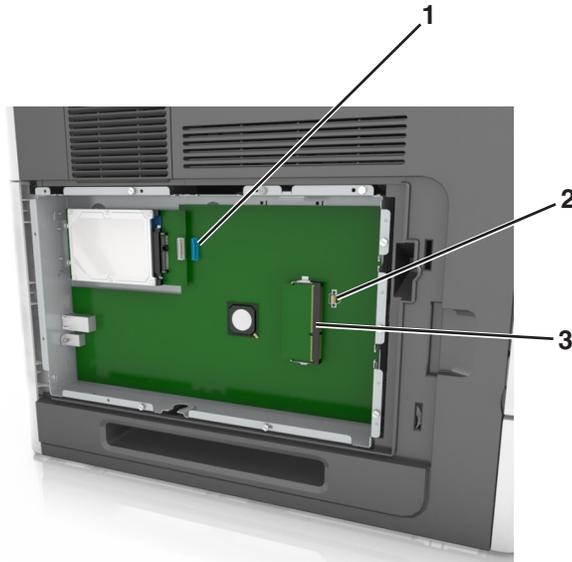


3 Remove the shield.



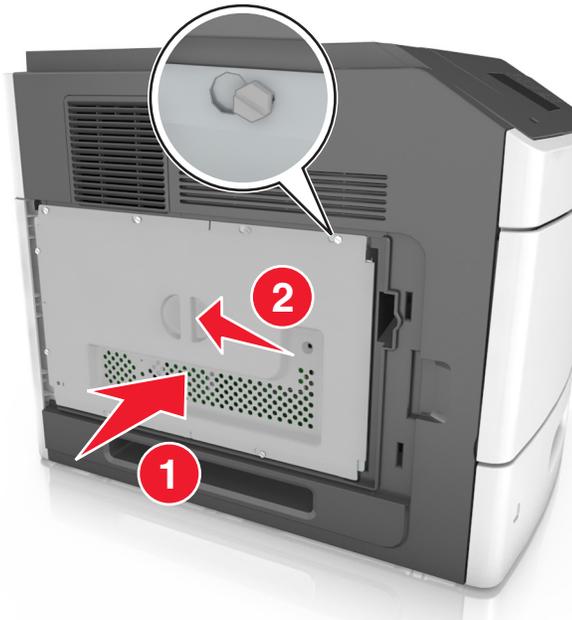
4 Use the following illustration to locate the appropriate connector:

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface on the printer first before touching any controller board electronic component or connector.

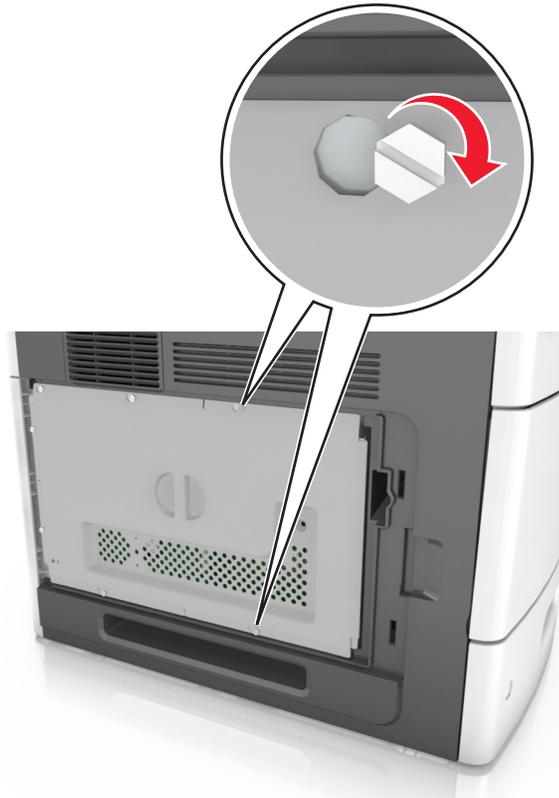


1	Lexmark Internal Solutions Port or printer hard disk connector
2	Option card connector
3	Memory card connector

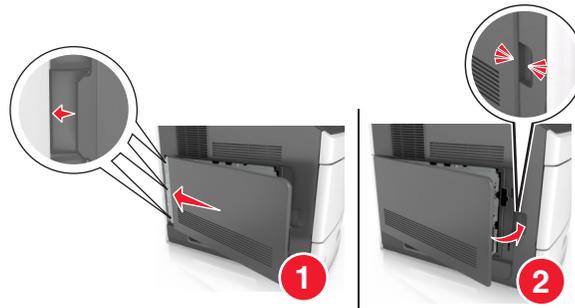
5 Align the screws with the holes on the shield, and then reattach the shield.



6 Tighten the screws on the shield.



7 Reattach the access cover.



## Installing a memory card

**⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer first before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.

An optional memory card can be purchased separately and attached to the controller board.

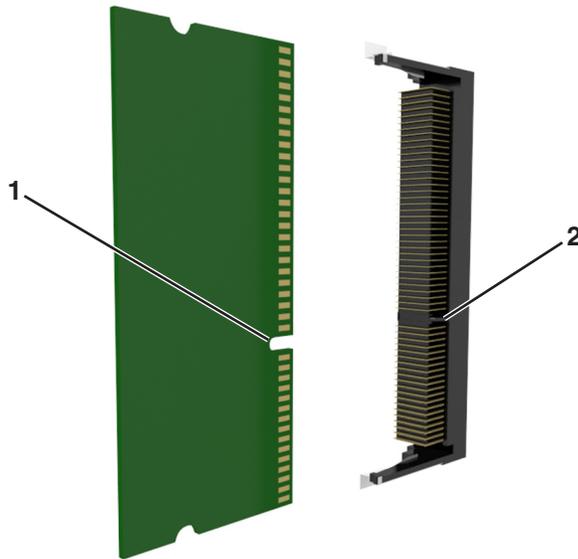
**1** Access the controller board.

For more information, see [“Accessing the controller board” on page 11](#).

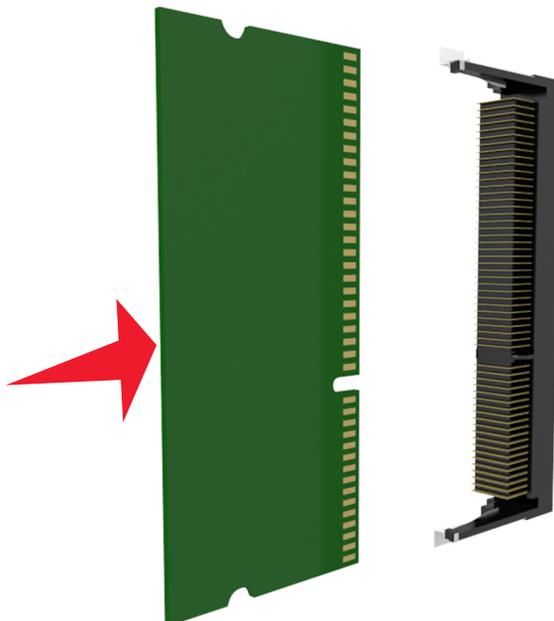
**2** Unpack the memory card.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the connection points along the edge of the card. Doing so may cause damage.

**3** Align the notch (1) on the memory card with the ridge (2) on the connector.



**4** Push the memory card straight into the connector, and then push the card toward the controller board wall until it *clicks* into place.



**5** Reattach the controller board shield, and then the controller board access cover.

## Installing an Internal Solutions Port

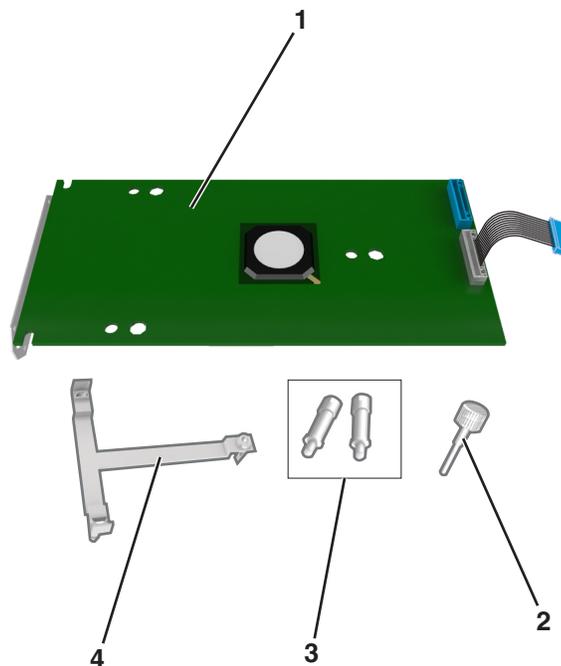
The controller board supports one optional Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP).

**Note:** This task requires a flat-head screwdriver.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer first before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.

- 1 Access the controller board.  
For more information, see [“Accessing the controller board” on page 11.](#)
- 2 If an optional printer hard disk is installed, then remove the printer hard disk first.  
For more information, see [“Removing a printer hard disk” on page 25.](#)
- 3 Unpack the ISP kit.



1	ISP solution
2	Screw for attaching the plastic bracket to the ISP
3	Screws for attaching the ISP mounting bracket to the controller board shield
4	Plastic bracket

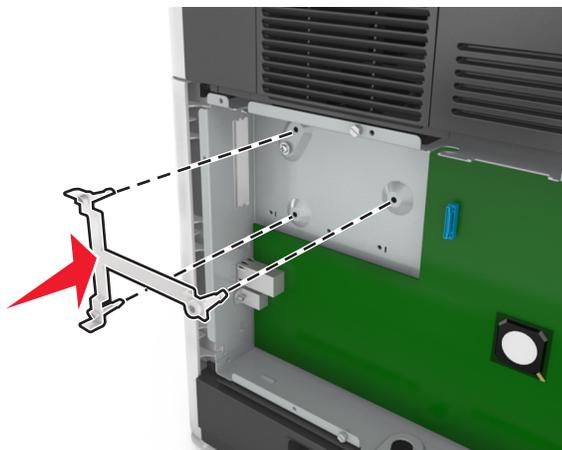
- 4 Remove the metal cover from the ISP opening.
- a Loosen the screw.



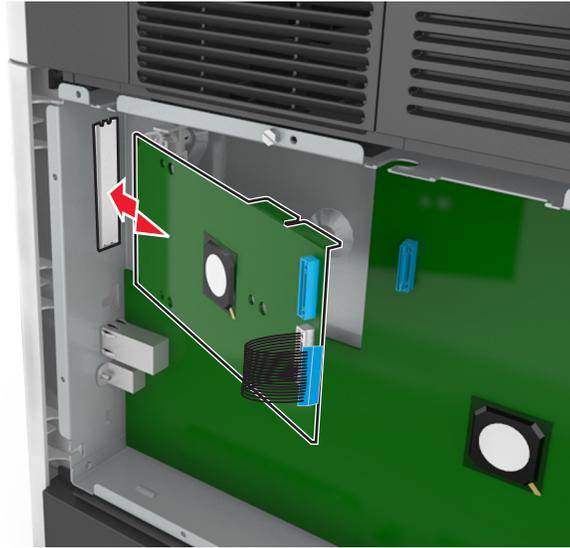
- b Lift the metal cover, and then pull it out completely.



- 5 Align the posts of the plastic bracket with the holes on the controller board cage, and then press the plastic bracket on the controller board cage until it *clicks* into place. Make sure the cables are neatly tucked under the plastic bracket.

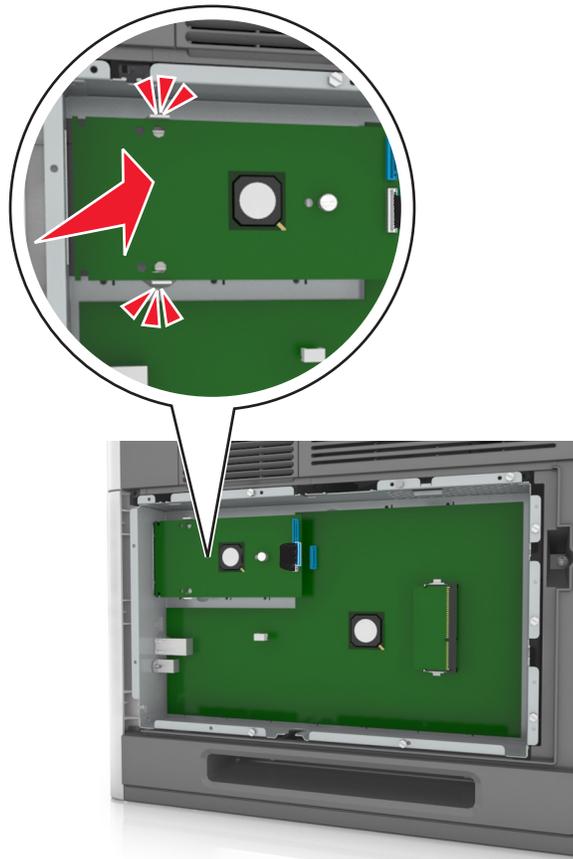


- 6 Install the ISP on the plastic bracket.

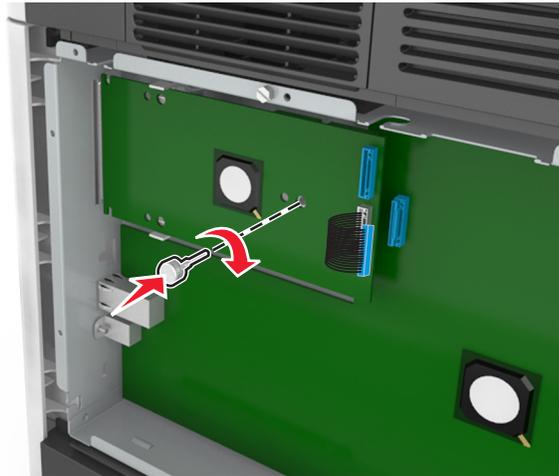


**Note:** Hold the ISP at an angle over the plastic bracket so that any overhanging connectors will pass through the ISP opening in the controller board cage.

- 7 Lower the ISP toward the plastic bracket until the ISP is seated between the guides of the plastic bracket.

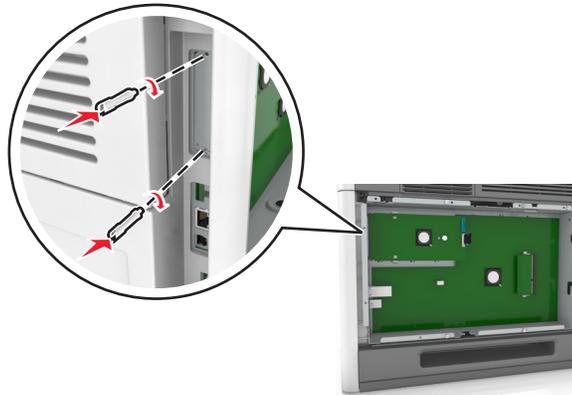


- 8 Use the provided thumbscrew for the ISP to attach the plastic bracket to the ISP.



**Note:** Turn the screw clockwise, enough to hold the ISP in place, but do not tighten it yet.

- 9 Attach the two provided screws to secure the ISP mounting bracket to the controller board shield.

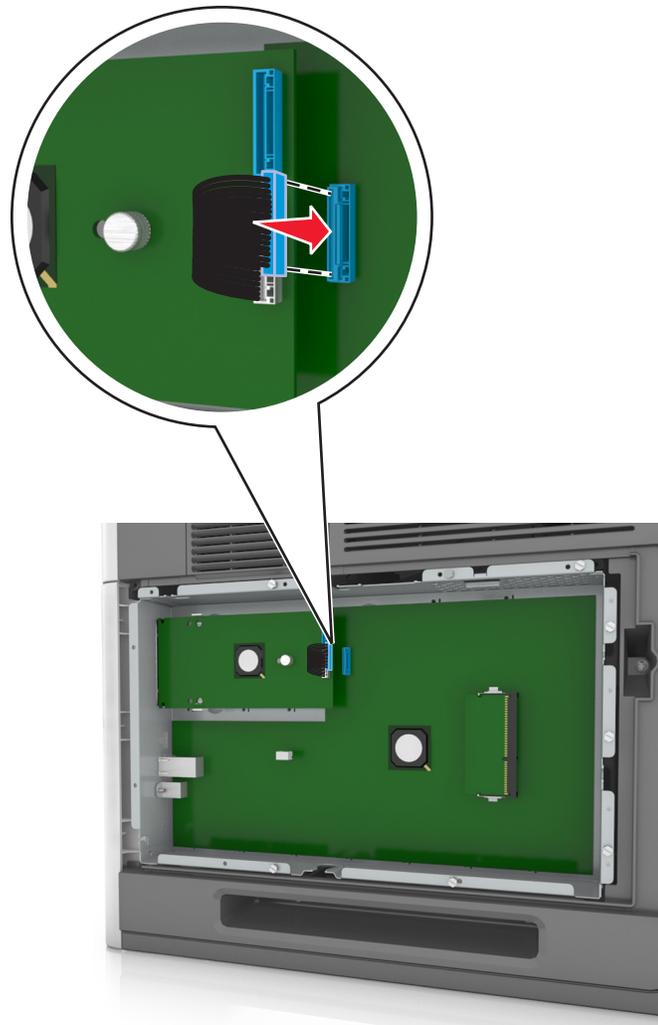


- 10 Tighten the thumbscrew that is attached to the ISP.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not screw it on too tightly.

- 11 Connect the ISP solution interface cable into the receptacle of the controller board.

**Note:** The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.



## Installing an optional card

**⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface on the printer before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.

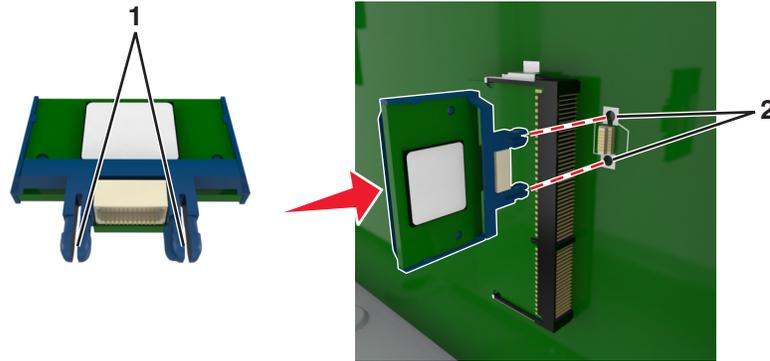
- 1 Access the controller board.

For more information, see [“Accessing the controller board” on page 11](#).

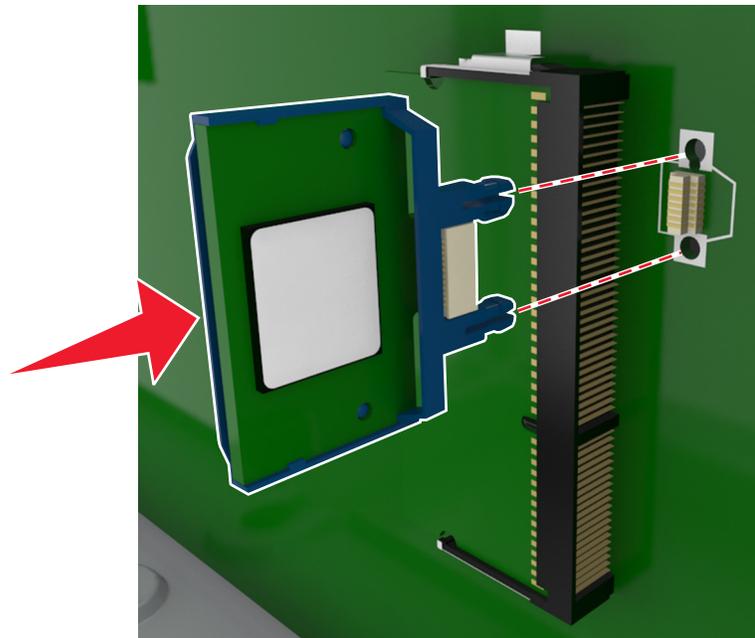
- 2 Unpack the optional card.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

- 3 Holding the card by its sides, align the plastic pins (1) on the card with the holes (2) on the controller board.



- 4 Push the card firmly into place as shown in the illustration.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Improper installation of the card may cause damage to the card and the controller board.

**Note:** The entire length of the connector on the card must touch and be flushed against the controller board.

- 5 Close the controller board access door.

**Note:** When the printer software and any hardware options are installed, it may be necessary to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs. For more information, see [“Adding available options in the print driver” on page 33](#).

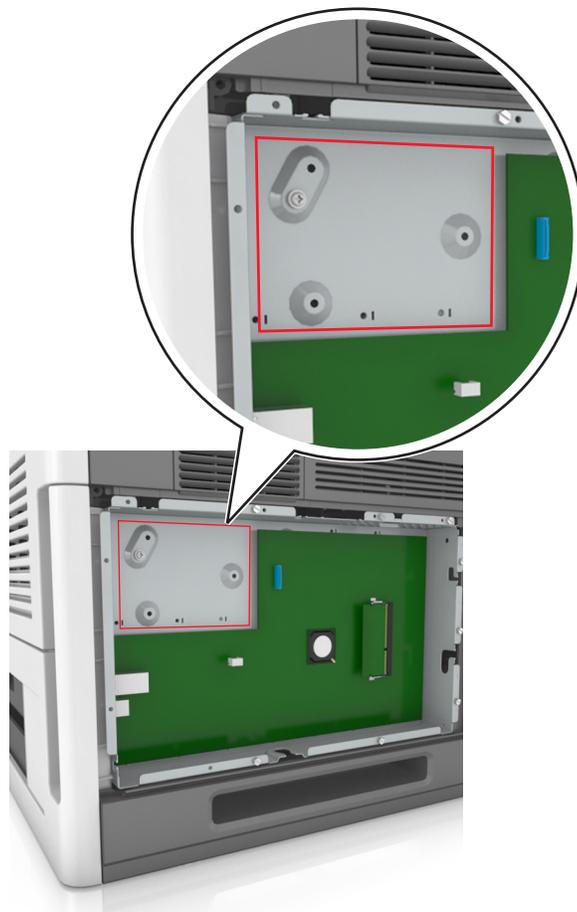
## Installing a printer hard disk

**Note:** This task requires a flat-head screwdriver.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer first before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.

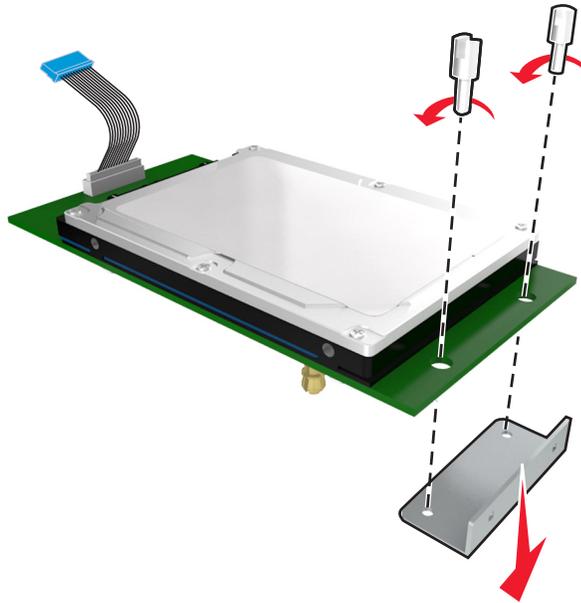
- 1 Access the controller board.  
For more information, see [“Accessing the controller board” on page 11.](#)
- 2 Unpack the printer hard disk.
- 3 Locate the appropriate connector on the controller board cage.



**Note:** If an optional ISP is currently installed, then the printer hard disk must be installed onto the ISP.

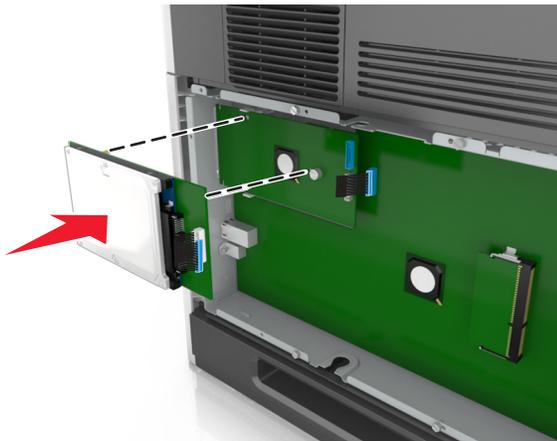
To install a printer hard disk onto the ISP:

- a Remove the screws attached to the printer hard disk mounting bracket, and then remove the bracket.



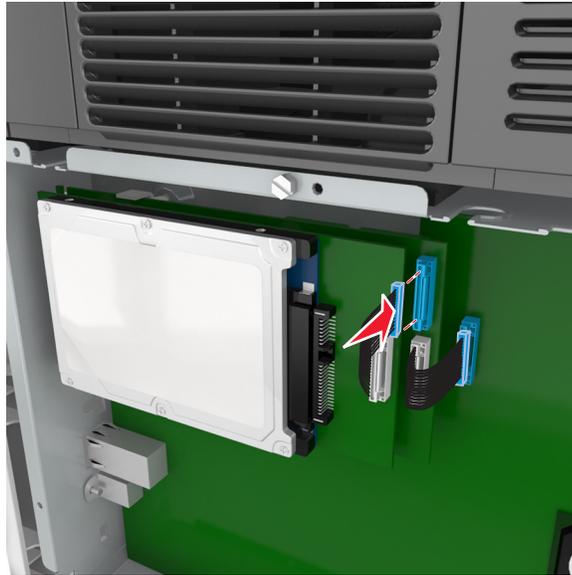
- b Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk to the holes in the ISP, and then press the printer hard disk down until the standoffs are in place.

**Installation warning:** Hold only the edges of the printed circuit board assembly. Do not touch or press on the center of the printer hard disk. Doing so may cause damage.



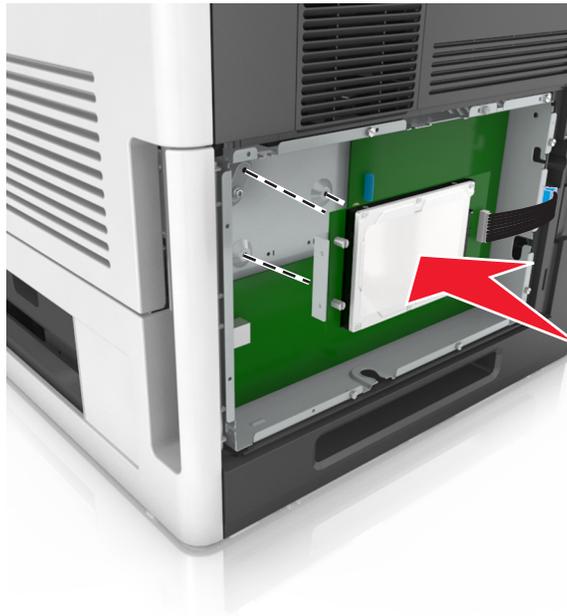
- c Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the ISP.

**Note:** The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.



- 4 Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk to the holes in the controller board cage, and then press the printer hard disk down until the standoffs are in place.

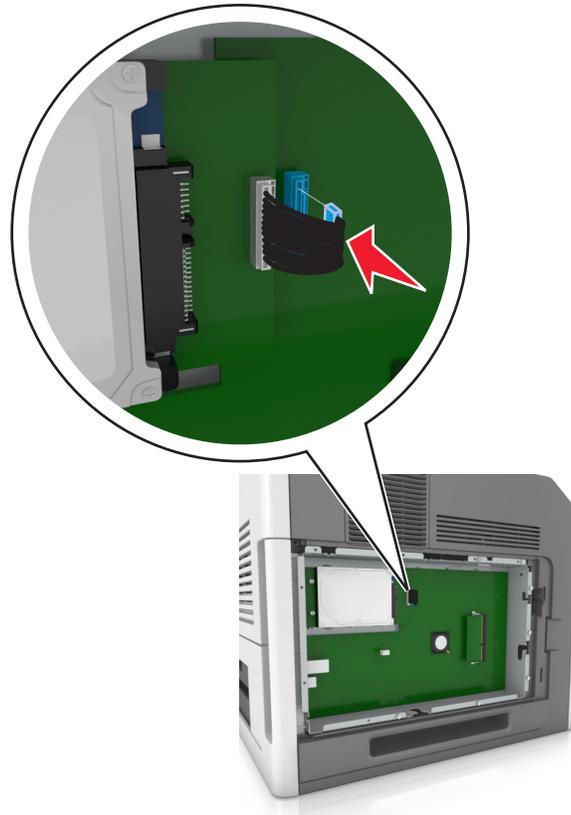
**Installation warning:** Hold only the edges of the printed circuit board assembly. Do not touch or press on the center of the printer hard disk. Doing so may cause damage.



**Note:** Make sure the cables are neatly tucked under the printer hard disk.

- 5 Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the controller board.

**Note:** The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.



## Removing a printer hard disk

**Note:** This task requires a flat-head screwdriver.

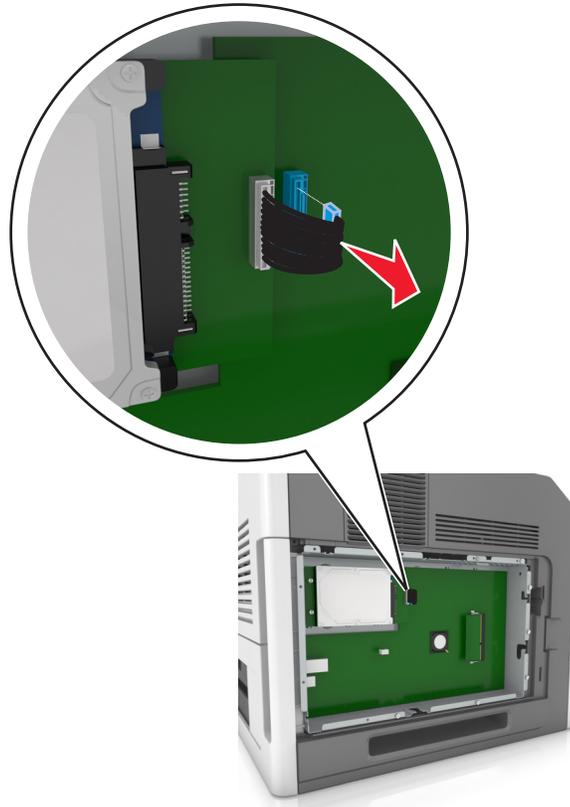
**⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface on the printer before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.

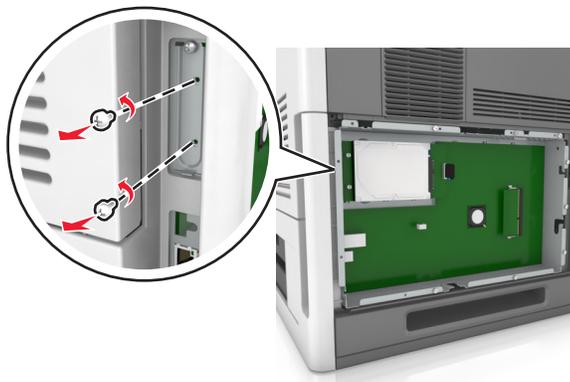
**1** Access the controller board.

For more information, see [“Accessing the controller board” on page 11](#).

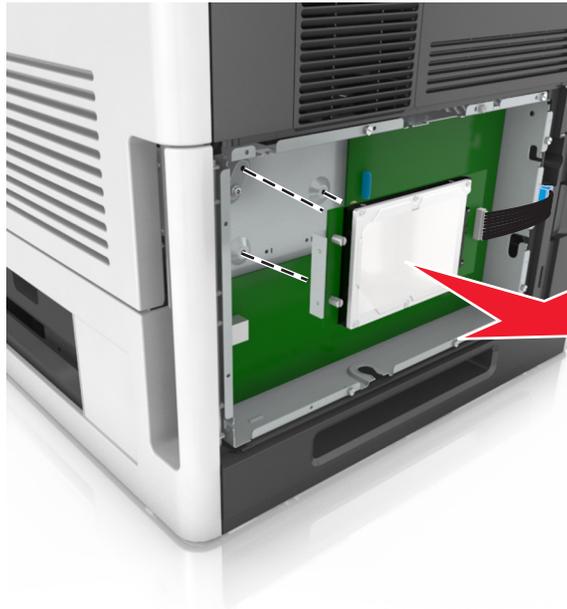
**2** Unplug the printer hard disk interface cable from the controller board, leaving the cable attached to the printer hard disk. To unplug the cable, squeeze the paddle at the plug of the interface cable to disengage the latch before pulling out the cable.



**3** Remove the screws holding the printer hard disk in place.



- 4 Remove the printer hard disk.



- 5 Set aside the printer hard disk.

## Installing hardware options

### Order of installation

- CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.
- CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.
- CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using multiple input options. If you purchased a printer with a similar configuration, then you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

Install the printer and any hardware options you have purchased in the following order:

- Caster base
- 2100-sheet tray or spacer
- Optional 550- or 250-sheet tray
- Printer

For more information on installing a caster base, optional 550- or 250-sheet tray, spacer, or 2100-sheet tray, see the setup sheet that came with the option.

## Installing optional trays

-  **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.
-  **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.
-  **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using multiple input options. If you purchased a printer with a similar configuration, then you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

- 1 Turn off the printer using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.

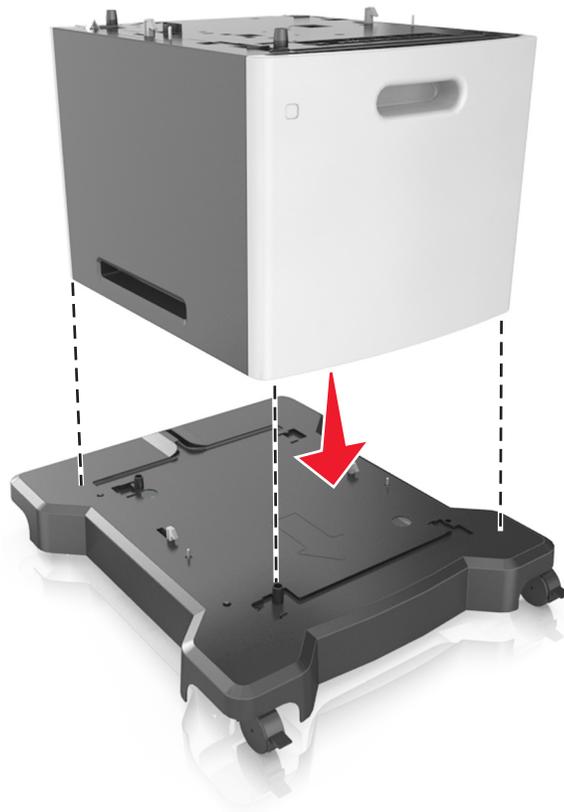


- 2 Unpack the optional tray, and then remove all packing material.
- 3 Pull out the tray completely from the base.



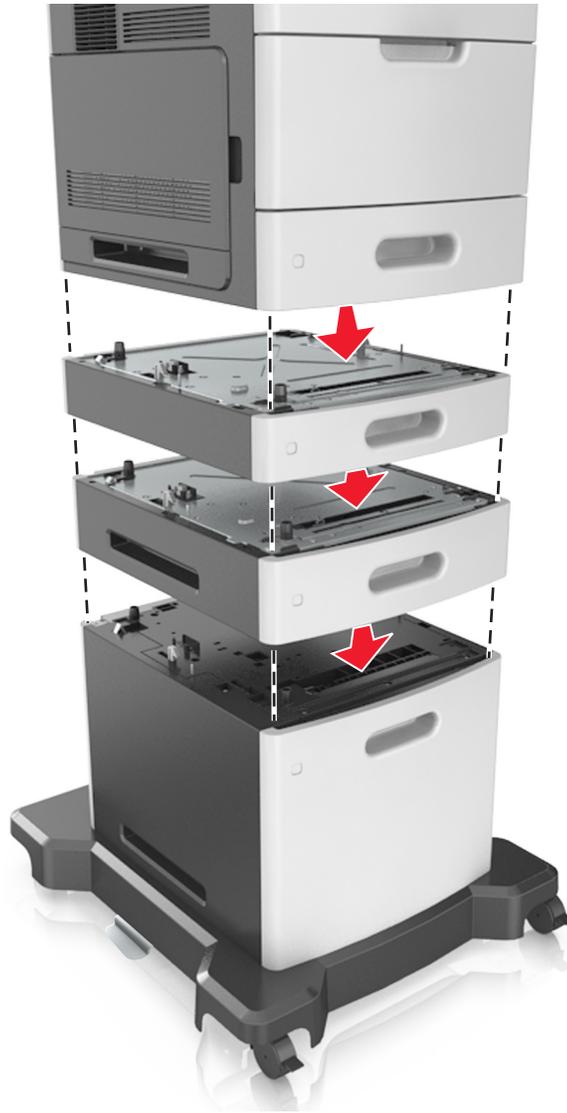
- 4 Remove any packing material from inside the tray.
- 5 Insert the tray into the base.
- 6 Place the tray near the printer.
- 7 Align the optional tray with the caster base.

**Note:** Make sure to lock the wheels of the caster base to secure the printer.



**8** Align the printer with the tray, and then slowly lower the printer into place.

**Note:** Optional trays lock together when stacked.



**9** Connect the power cord to the printer, then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.



**Note:** When the printer software and any optional trays are installed, you may need to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs. For more information, see [“Adding available options in the print driver” on page 33.](#)

To uninstall the optional trays, slide the latch on the right side of the printer toward the front of the printer until it *clicks* into place, and then remove stacked trays one at a time from the top to the bottom.

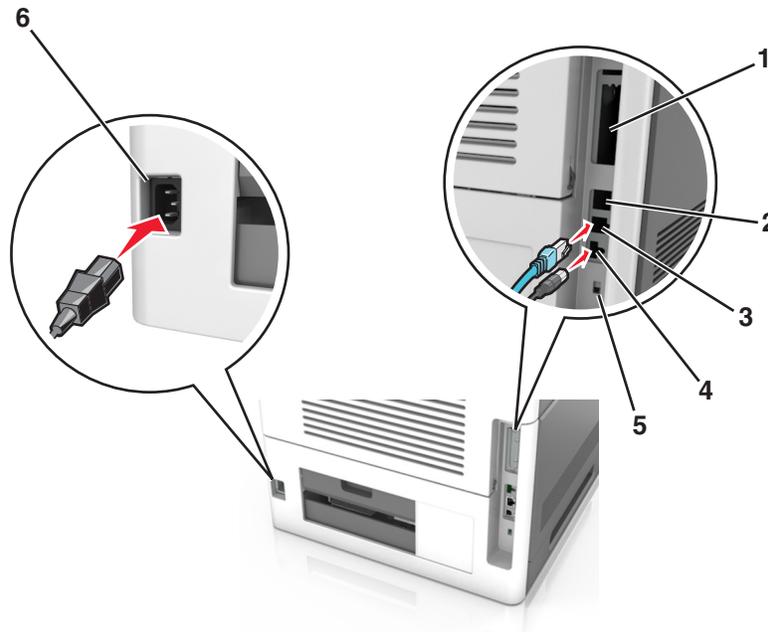
## Attaching cables

**⚠ CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as a power cord, a fax feature, or USB cable, during a lightning storm.

Connect the printer to the computer using a USB cable or Ethernet cable.

Make sure to match the following:

- The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer
- The appropriate Ethernet cable to the Ethernet port
- The appropriate parallel cable with the parallel port



	Use the	To
1	Parallel port	Connect the printer to a computer. <b>Note:</b> This can also be used in installing an optional Internal Solutions Port (ISP).
2	USB port	Attach an optional wireless network adapter.
3	Ethernet port	Connect the printer to a network.
4	USB printer port	Connect the printer to a computer.
5	Security slot	Attach a lock that will secure the controller board.
6	Printer power cord socket	Connect the printer to a properly grounded electrical outlet.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the USB cable, any wireless network adapter, or the printer in the area shown while actively printing. Loss of data or a malfunction can occur.

**Note:** This feature is available only if you purchase optional trays and a caster base.

After attaching the Ethernet cable and power cord, neatly tuck the cables in the channels at the back of the printer.



## Setting up the printer software

### Installing the printer

- 1 Obtain a copy of the software installer package.
- 2 Run the installer, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.
- 3 For Macintosh users, add the printer.

**Note:** Obtain the printer IP address from the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu.

### Adding available options in the print driver

#### For Windows users

- 1 Open the printers folder.

##### In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

**Run > type control printers > OK**

**In Windows 7 or earlier**

- a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
  - b Type **control printers**.
  - c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.
- 2 Select the printer you want to update, and then do either of the following:
  - For Windows 7 or later, select **Printer properties**.
  - For earlier versions, select **Properties**.
- 3 Navigate to the Configuration tab, and then select **Update Now - Ask Printer**.
- 4 Apply the changes.

**For Macintosh users**

- 1 From System Preferences in the Apple menu, navigate to your printer, and then select **Options & Supplies**.
- 2 Navigate to the list of hardware options, and then add any installed options.
- 3 Apply the changes.

## Networking

**Notes:**

- Purchase a MarkNet N8350 wireless network adapter before setting up the printer on a wireless network. For information on installing the wireless network adapter, see the instruction sheet that came with the adapter.
- A Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name assigned to a wireless network. Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP), Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), WPA2, and 802.1X-RADIUS are types of security used on a network.

### Preparing to set up the printer on an Ethernet network

To configure your printer to connect to an Ethernet network, organize the following information before you begin:

**Note:** If your network automatically assigns IP addresses to computers and printers, continue on to installing the printer.

- A valid, unique IP address for the printer to use on the network
- The network gateway
- The network mask
- A nickname for the printer (optional)

**Note:** A printer nickname can make it easier for you to identify your printer on the network. You can choose to use the default printer nickname, or assign a name that is easier for you to remember.

You will need an Ethernet cable to connect the printer to the network and an available port where the printer can physically connect to the network. Use a new network cable when possible to avoid potential problems caused by a damaged cable.

## Preparing to set up the printer on a wireless network

### Notes:

- Make sure your wireless network adapter is installed in your printer and working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.
- Make sure your access point (wireless router) is turned on and is working properly.

Make sure you have the following information before setting up the printer on a wireless network:

- **SSID**—The SSID is also referred to as the network name.
- **Wireless Mode (or Network Mode)**—The mode is either infrastructure or ad hoc.
- **Channel (for ad hoc networks)**—The channel defaults to automatic for infrastructure networks.

Some ad hoc networks will also require the automatic setting. Check with your system support person if you are not sure which channel to select.

- **Security Method**—There are four basic options for Security Method:

- WEP key

If your network uses more than one WEP key, then enter up to four in the provided spaces. Select the key currently in use on the network by selecting the default WEP transmit key.

- WPA or WPA2 preshared key or passphrase

WPA includes encryption as an additional layer of security. The choices are AES or TKIP. Encryption must be set for the same type on the router and on the printer, or the printer will not be able to communicate on the network.

- 802.1X–RADIUS

If you are installing the printer on an 802.1X network, then you may need the following:

- Authentication type
- Inner authentication type
- 802.1X user name and password
- Certificates

- No security

If your wireless network does not use any type of security, then you will not have any security information.

**Note:** We do not recommend using an unsecured wireless network.

### Notes:

- If you do not know the SSID of the network that your computer is connected to, then launch the wireless utility of the computer network adapter, and then look for the network name. If you cannot find the SSID or the security information for your network, then see the documentation that came with the access point, or contact your system support person.
- To find the WPA/WPA2 preshared key or passphrase for the wireless network, see the documentation that came with the access point, see the Embedded Web Server associated with the access point, or consult your system support person.

## Connecting the printer using the Wireless Setup Wizard

Before you begin, make sure that:

- A wireless network adapter is working and installed in the printer. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the adapter.
- An Ethernet cable is disconnected from the printer.
- Active NIC is set to Auto. To set this to Auto, navigate to either of the following:
  -  > **Network/Ports > Active NIC > Auto**
  -  > **Network/Ports > Active NIC > Auto > Submit**

**Note:** Make sure to turn off the printer, then wait for at least five seconds, and then turn on the printer.

**1** From the printer control panel, navigate to either of the following:

-  > **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Wireless > Wireless Connection Setup**
-  > **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Wireless > Wireless Connection Setup**

**2** Select a wireless connection setup.

Select	To
Search for networks	Show available wireless connections. <b>Note:</b> This menu shows all broadcast secured or unsecured SSIDs.
Enter a network name	Manually type the SSID. <b>Note:</b> Make sure to type the correct SSID.
Wi-Fi Protected Setup	Connect the printer to a wireless network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup.

**3** Follow the instructions on the printer display.

## Connecting the printer to a wireless network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup

Before you begin, make sure that:

- The access point (wireless router) is Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) certified or WPS-compatible. For more information, see the documentation that came with your access point.
- A wireless network adapter installed in your printer is attached and working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.

### Using the Push Button Configuration method

**1** Depending on your printer model, navigate to either of the following:

-  > **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Wireless > Wi-Fi Protected Setup > Start Push Button Method**
-  > **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Wireless > Wi-Fi Protected Setup > Start Push Button Method**

**2** Follow the instructions on the printer display.

## Using the Personal Identification Number (PIN) method

- 1 Depending on your printer model, navigate to either of the following:
  -  > **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Wireless > Wi-Fi Protected Setup > Start PIN Method**
  -  > **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Wireless > Wi-Fi Protected Setup > Start PIN Method**
- 2 Copy the eight-digit WPS PIN.
- 3 Open a Web browser, and then type the IP address of your access point in the address field.  
**Notes:**
  - The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
  - If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.
- 4 Access the WPS settings. For more information, see the documentation that came with your access point.
- 5 Enter the eight-digit PIN, and then save the setting.

## Connecting the printer to a wireless network using the Embedded Web Server

Before you begin, make sure that:

- Your printer is connected temporarily to an Ethernet network.
- A wireless network adapter is installed in your printer and working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer control panel. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Network/Ports > Wireless**.
- 3 Modify the settings to match the settings of your access point (wireless router).  
**Note:** Make sure to enter the correct SSID, security method, preshared key or passphrase, network mode, and channel.
- 4 Click **Submit**.
- 5 Turn off the printer, and then disconnect the Ethernet cable. Then wait for at least five seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- 6 To verify if your printer is connected to the network, print a network setup page. Then in the Network Card [x] section, see if the status is Connected.

## Changing port settings after installing a new network ISP

### Notes:

- If the printer has a static IP address, then you do not need to make any changes.
- If the computers are configured to use the network name, instead of an IP address, then you do not need to make any changes.
- If you are adding a wireless ISP to a printer previously configured for an Ethernet connection, then make sure the printer is disconnected from the Ethernet network.

### For Windows users

- 1 Open the printers folder.
- 2 From the shortcut menu of the printer with the new ISP, open the printer properties.
- 3 Configure the port from the list.
- 4 Update the IP address.
- 5 Apply the changes.

### For Macintosh users

- 1 From System Preferences in the Apple menu, navigate to the list of printers, and then select **+ > IP**.
- 2 Type the IP address in the address field.
- 3 Apply the changes.

## Setting up serial printing (Windows only)

After installing the serial or communication (COM) port, configure the printer and the computer.

**Note:** Serial printing reduces print speed.

- 1 Set the parameters in the printer.
  - a From the control panel, navigate to the menu for the port settings.
  - b Locate the menu for the serial port settings, and then adjust the settings, if necessary.
  - c Save the settings.
- 2 From your computer, open the printers folder, and then select your printer.
- 3 Open the printer properties, and then select the COM port from the list.
- 4 Set the COM port parameters in Device Manager.

Use the Run dialog box to open the command prompt, and then type `devmgmt.msc`.

## Verifying printer setup

When all hardware and software options are installed and the printer is turned on, verify that the printer is set up correctly by printing the following:

- **Menu settings page**—Use this page to verify that all printer options are installed correctly. A list of installed options appears toward the bottom of the page. If an option you installed is not listed, then it is not installed correctly. Remove the option, and then install it again.

For more information, see [“Printing a menu settings page” on page 77](#) or [“Printing a menu settings page” on page 123](#)

- **Network setup page**—Use this page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

**Note:** Make sure your printer has Ethernet or wireless capability and is attached to a network.

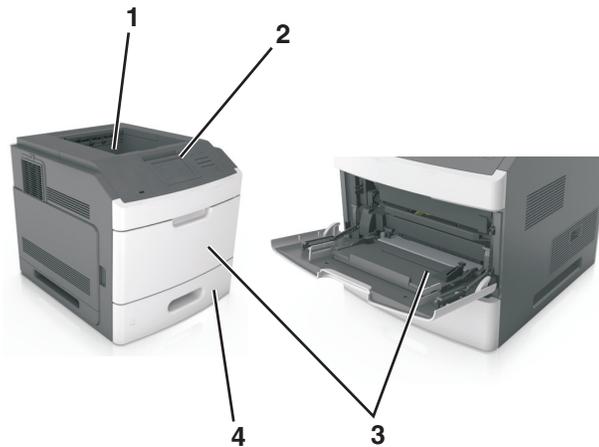
For more information, see [“Printing a network setup page” on page 77](#) or [“Printing a network setup page” on page 124](#).

# Using M5155 and M5163

## Learning about the printer

### Printer configurations

#### Basic model



1	Standard bin
2	Printer control panel
3	Multipurpose feeder
4	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)

#### Fully configured model

**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using multiple input options. If you purchased a printer with a similar configuration, then you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

The following illustration shows the maximum number of optional finishers and trays that are supported by the printer. For more information on other configurations, visit [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

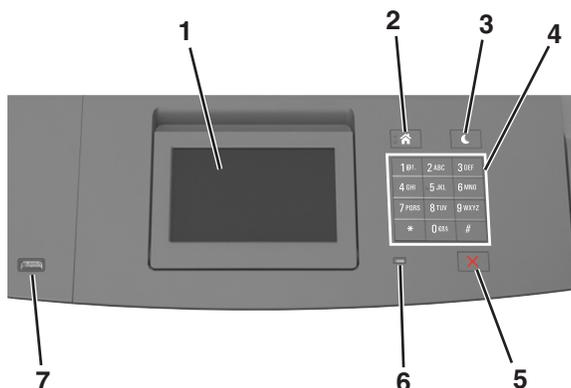


	Hardware option	Alternative hardware option
1	Staple finisher	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Output expander</li> <li>• 4-bin mailbox</li> <li>• Staple, hole punch finisher</li> </ul>
2	4-bin mailbox	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Staple finisher</li> <li>• Staple, hole punch finisher</li> <li>• Output expander</li> </ul>
3	Caster base	None
4	2100-sheet tray	None
5	550-sheet tray	250-sheet tray
6	250-sheet tray	550-sheet tray
7	4-bin mailbox	Output expander
8	Output expander	4-bin mailbox

The staple, hole punch finisher must not be combined with any other output options.

- In a configuration with three optional finishers, the output expander and mailbox may be installed in any order.
- In a configuration with two optional finishers:
  - The staple finisher must always be on top.
  - The high-capacity output expander must always be at the bottom.
  - The output expander is the only option that can be placed on top of the high-capacity output expander.
- When using optional trays:
  - Always use a caster base when the printer is configured with a 2100-sheet tray.
  - The 2100-sheet tray must always be at the bottom of a configuration.
  - A maximum of four optional trays may be configured with the printer.
  - The optional 250- and 550-sheet trays may be installed in any order.

### Using the printer control panel



	Use the	To
1	Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• View the printer status.</li> <li>• Set up and operate the printer.</li> </ul>
2	Home button	Go to the home screen.
3	Sleep button	Enable Sleep mode or Hibernate mode. Do the following to wake the printer from Sleep Mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press any hard button.</li> <li>• Pull out Tray 1 or load paper in the multipurpose feeder.</li> <li>• Open a door or cover.</li> <li>• Send a print job from the computer.</li> <li>• Perform a power-on reset with the main power switch.</li> <li>• Attach a device to the USB port on the printer.</li> </ul>
4	Keypad	Enter numbers, letters, or symbols.
5	Stop or Cancel button	Stop all printer activity.
6	Indicator light	Check the status of the printer.

	Use the	To
7	USB port	Connect a flash drive to the printer. <b>Note:</b> Only the front USB port supports flash drives.

## Understanding the colors of the Sleep button and indicator lights

The colors of the Sleep button and indicator lights on the control panel signify a printer status or condition.

Indicator light	Printer status
Off	The printer is off or in Hibernate mode.
Blinking green	The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing.
Solid green	The printer is on, but idle.
Blinking red	The printer requires user intervention.

Sleep button light	Printer status
Off	The printer is off, idle, or in Ready state.
Solid amber	The printer is in Sleep mode.
Blinking amber	The printer is entering or waking from Hibernate mode.
Blinking amber for 0.1 second, then goes completely off for 1.9 seconds in a slow, pulsing pattern	The printer is in Hibernate mode.

## Understanding the home screen

When the printer is turned on, the display shows a basic screen, referred to as the home screen. Use the home screen buttons and icons to initiate an action.

**Note:** Your home screen may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.



Touch	To
1	Change Language Change the primary language of the printer.
2	Bookmarks Create, organize, and save a set of bookmarks (URLs) into a tree view of folders and file links. <b>Note:</b> The tree view does not include bookmarks created within Forms and Favorites, and the ones in the tree are not usable in Forms and Favorites.
3	Held Jobs Display all current held jobs.
4	USB View, select, or print photos and documents from a flash drive. <b>Note:</b> This icon appears only when you return to the home screen while a memory card or flash drive is connected to the printer.
5	Menus Access printer menus. <b>Note:</b> These menus are available only when the printer is in Ready state.
6	Status message bar <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Show the current printer status such as <b>Ready</b> or <b>Busy</b>.</li> <li>• Show the status of printer supplies.</li> <li>• Show intervention messages and the instructions on how to clear them.</li> </ul>
7	Status/Supplies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Show a printer warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing.</li> <li>• View more information on the printer warning or message, and on how to clear it.</li> </ul>
8	Tips View a context-sensitive help information.

These may also appear on the home screen:

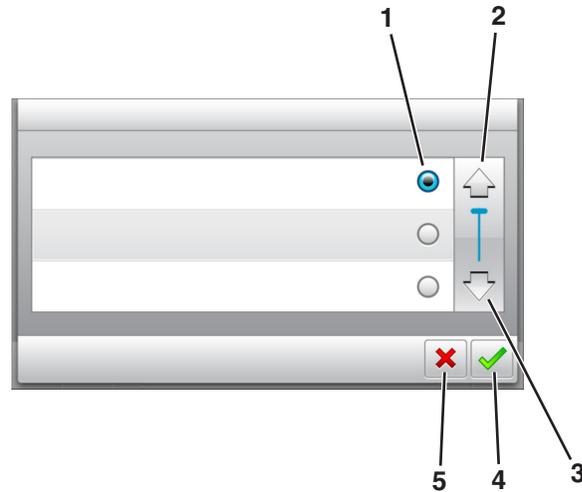
Touch	To
Search Held Jobs	Search current held jobs.
Jobs by user	Access print jobs saved by user.
Profiles and Apps	Access profiles and applications.

## Features

Feature	Description
Attendance message alert 	If an attendance message affects a function, then this icon appears and the red indicator light blinks.
Warning 	If an error condition occurs, then this icon appears.
Printer IP address Example: 123 . 123 . 123 . 123	The IP address of your printer is located at the top left corner of the home screen. You can use the IP address when accessing the Embedded Web Server to view and remotely configure printer settings.

## Using the touch-screen buttons

**Note:** Your home screen may vary, depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.



	Touch the	To
1	Radio button	Select or clear an item.
2	Up arrow	Scroll up.
3	Down arrow	Scroll down.
4	Accept button	Save a setting.
5	Cancel button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancel an action or a selection.</li> <li>• Return to the previous screen.</li> </ul>

Touch	To
	Return to the home screen.
	Open a context-sensitive Help dialog on the printer control panel.
	Scroll to the left.
	Scroll to the right.

## Setting up and using the home screen applications

### Notes:

- Your home screen may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded applications. Some applications are supported only in some printer models.
- There may be additional solutions and applications available for purchase. For more information, go to [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

### Finding the IP address of the computer

#### For Windows users

- 1 In the Run dialog box, type `cmd` to open the command prompt.
- 2 Type `ipconfig`, and then look for the IP address.

#### For Macintosh users

- 1 From System Preferences in the Apple menu, select **Network**.
- 2 Select your connection type, and then click **Advanced > TCP/IP**.
- 3 Look for the IP address.

### Finding the IP address of the printer

**Note:** Make sure your printer is connected to a network or to a print server.

You can find the printer IP address:

- From the top left corner of the printer home screen.
- From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu.
- By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section.

**Note:** An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

### Accessing the Embedded Web Server

The Embedded Web Server is the printer Web page that lets you view and remotely configure printer settings even when you are not physically near the printer.

- 1 Obtain the printer IP address:
  - From the printer control panel home screen
  - From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu
  - By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section

**Note:** An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123 . 123 . 123 . 123 .

- 2 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

**Note:** If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

## Customizing the home screen

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:** View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 Do one or more of the following:

- Show or hide the icons of basic printer functions.
  - a Click **Settings > General Settings > Home screen customization**.
  - b Select the check boxes to specify which icons appear on the home screen.

**Note:** If you clear a check box beside an icon, then the icon does not appear on the home screen.

- c Click **Submit**.
- Customize the icon for an application. For more information, see [“Finding information about the home screen applications” on page 47](#) or see the documentation that came with the application.

## Activating the home screen applications

### Finding information about the home screen applications

Your printer comes with preinstalled home screen applications. Before you can use these applications, you must first activate and set up these applications using the Embedded Web Server. For more information on accessing the Embedded Web Server, see [“Accessing the Embedded Web Server” on page 46](#).

For more information on configuring and using the home screen applications, do the following:

- 1 Go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.
- 2 Click **Software Solutions**, and then select either of the following:
  - **Scan to Network**—This lets you find information about the Scan to Network application.
  - **Other Applications**—This lets you find information about the other applications.
- 3 Click the **Manuals** tab, and then select the document for the home screen application.

## Using Background and Idle Screen

Icon	Description
	<p>The application lets you customize the background and idle screen of your printer home screen.</p>

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:  
**Change Background** > select background to use
- 2 Touch .

## Setting up Forms and Favorites

**Note:** A later version of this *User's Guide* may contain a direct link to the *Administrator's Guide* of this application. To check for updates of this *User's Guide*, go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Use	To
	<p>Streamline work processes by letting you quickly find and print frequently used online forms directly from the printer home screen.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The printer must have permission to access the network folder, FTP site, or Web site where the bookmark is stored. From the computer where the bookmark is stored, use sharing, security, and firewall settings to allow the printer at least a <i>read</i> access. For help, see the documentation that came with your operating system.</p>

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:** View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 Click **Settings > Apps > Apps Management > Forms and Favorites**.

- 3 Click **Add**, and then customize the settings.

**Notes:**

- See the mouse-over help beside each field for a description of the setting.
- To make sure the location settings of the bookmark are correct, type the correct IP address of the host computer where the bookmark is located. For more information on obtaining the IP address of the host computer, see ["Finding the IP address of the computer" on page 46](#).
- Make sure the printer has access rights to the folder where the bookmark is located.

- 4 Click **Apply**.

To use the application, touch **Forms and Favorites** on the printer home screen, and then navigate through form categories, or search for forms based on a form number, name, or description.

## Understanding Eco-Settings

Icon	Description
	<p>The application lets you easily manage energy consumption, noise, toner, and paper usage settings to help reduce the environmental impact of your printer.</p>

## Exporting and importing a configuration

You can export configuration settings into a text file, and then import the file to apply the settings to other printers.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:** View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 To export or import a configuration for one application, do the following:

- a Click **Settings > Apps > Apps Management**.

- b From the list of installed applications, click the name of the application you want to configure.

- c Click **Configure**, and then do either of the following:

- To export a configuration to a file, click **Export**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen to save the configuration file.

**Notes:**

- When saving the configuration file, you can type a unique file name or use the default name.
- If a "JVM Out of Memory" error occurs, then repeat the export process until the configuration file is saved.
- To import a configuration from a file, click **Import**, and then browse to the saved configuration file that was exported from a previously configured printer.

**Notes:**

- Before importing the configuration file, you can choose to preview it first or load it directly.
- If a timeout occurs and a blank screen appears, then refresh the Web browser, and then click **Apply**.

- 3 To export or import a configuration for multiple applications, do the following:

- a Click **Settings > Import/Export**.

- b Do either of the following:

- To export a configuration file, click **Export Embedded Solutions Settings File**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen to save the configuration file.
- To import a configuration file, do the following:
  - 1 Click **Import Embedded Solutions Settings File > Choose File**, and then browse to the saved configuration file that was exported from a previously configured printer.
  - 2 Click **Submit**.

## Setting up Remote Operator Panel

This application enables you to interact with the printer control panel even when you are not physically near the network printer. From your computer, you can view the printer status, release held print jobs, create bookmarks, and do other print-related tasks.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:** View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 Click **Settings > Remote Operator Panel Settings**.

- 3 Select the **Enable** check box, and then customize the settings.
- 4 Click **Submit**.

To use the application, click **Remote Operator Panel > Launch VNC Applet**.

## Loading paper and specialty media

The selection and handling of paper and specialty media can affect how reliably documents print. For more information, see [“Avoiding jams” on page 214](#) and [“Storing paper” on page 135](#).

### Setting the paper size and type

From the home screen navigate to:

 > **Paper Menu** > **Paper Size/Type** > select a tray > select the paper size or type > 

### Configuring Universal paper settings

The Universal paper size is a user-defined setting that lets you print on paper sizes that are not preset in the printer menus.

#### Notes:

- The smallest supported Universal size is 70 x 127 mm (2.76 x 5 inches) for one-sided printing and 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 inches) for two-sided (duplex) printing.
- The largest supported Universal size is 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) for one-sided and two-sided printing.
- When printing on paper less than 210 mm (8.3 inches) wide, the printer may print at a reduced speed after a period of time to ensure the best print performance.
- If you regularly print large jobs on narrow paper, then you may use the MS710 Series printer models, which print batches of 10 or more pages of narrow paper at a faster speed. For more information on the MS710 Series printer models, contact your Lexmark sales representative.

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Paper Menu** > **Universal Setup** > **Units of Measure** > select a unit of measure

- 2 Touch **Portrait Width** or **Portrait Height**.

- 3 Select the width or height, and then touch .

### Loading the 250- or 550-sheet tray

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

- 1 Pull out the tray.

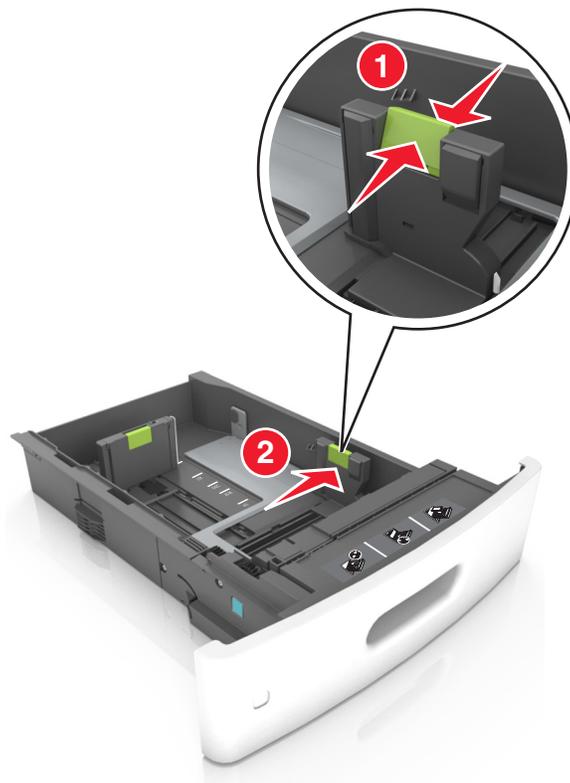
#### Notes:

- When loading folio-, legal-, or Oficio-size paper, lift the tray slightly and pull it out completely.

- Do not remove trays while a job prints or while **Busy** appears on the display. Doing so may cause a jam.



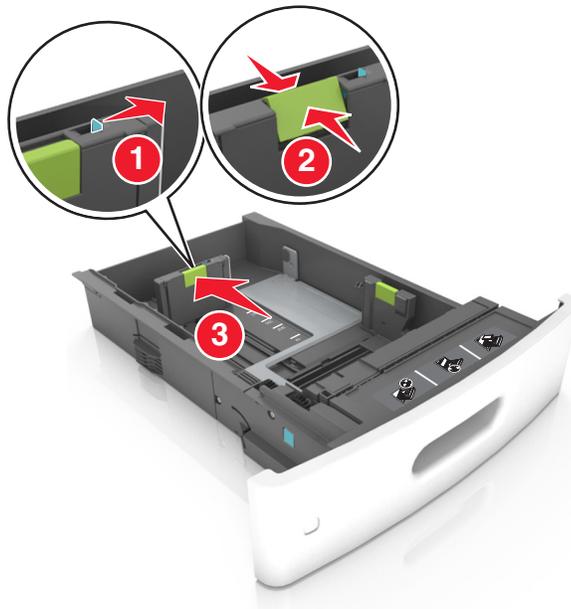
- 2 Squeeze and slide the width guide to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded until it *clicks* into place.



**Note:** Use the paper size indicators at the bottom of the tray to help position the guides.



- 3** Unlock the length guide, and then squeeze and slide the guide to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded.

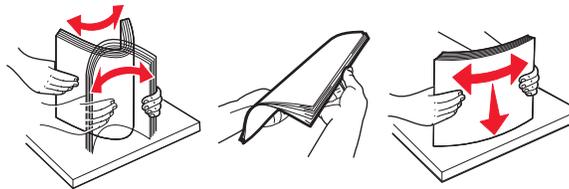


**Notes:**

- Lock the length guide for all paper sizes.
- Use the paper size indicators at the bottom of the tray to help position the guides.



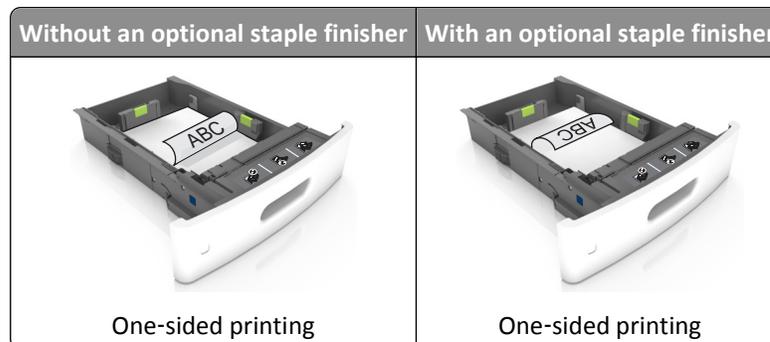
4 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

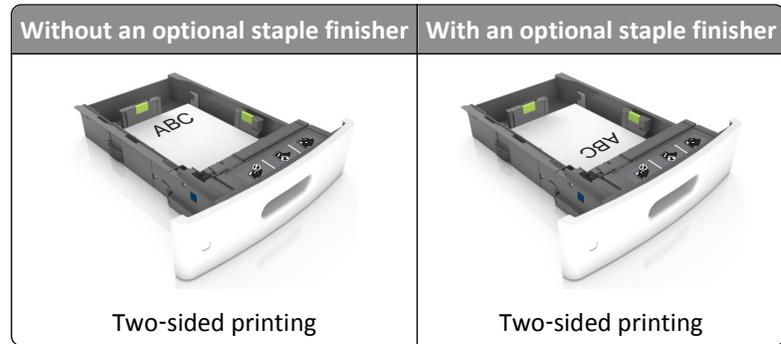


5 Load the paper stack with the printable side facedown.

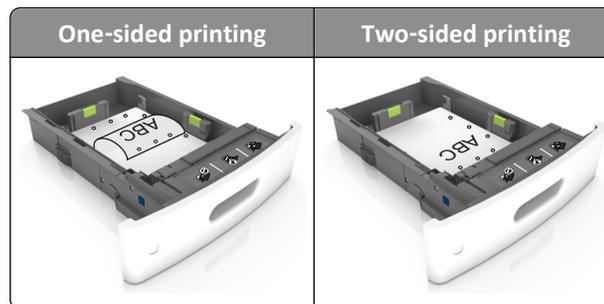
**Note:** Make sure the paper or envelope is loaded properly.

- There are different ways of loading letterhead depending on whether an optional staple finisher is installed or not.



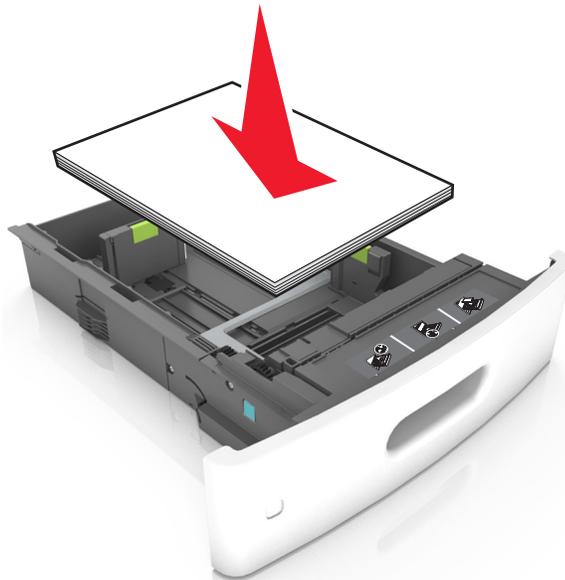


- If you are loading prepunched paper for use with the staple finisher, then make sure the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the right side of the tray.

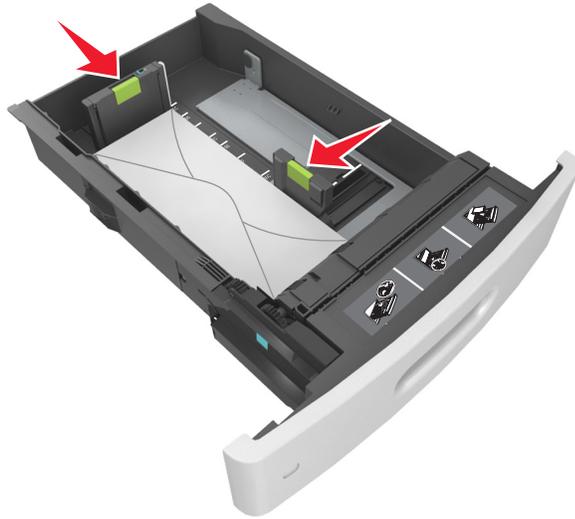


**Note:** If the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the left side of the tray, then a jam may occur.

- Do not slide the paper into the tray. Load paper as shown in the illustration.



- If you are loading envelopes, then make sure that the flap side is facing up and the envelopes are on the left side of the tray.

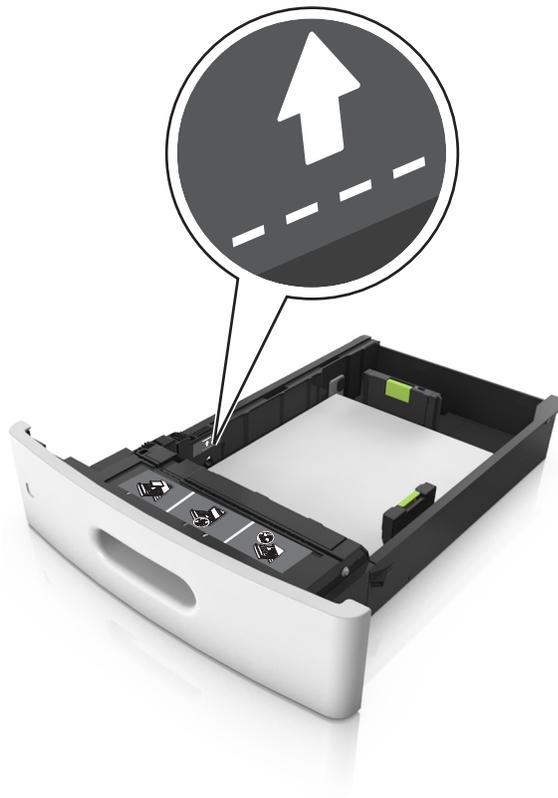


- Make sure the paper is below the solid line, which is the maximum paper fill indicator.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Overfilling the tray can cause paper jams.

- When using card stock, labels, or other types of specialty media, make sure the paper is below the dashed line, which is the alternate paper fill indicator.



**6** For custom- or Universal-size paper, adjust the paper guides to lightly touch the sides of the stack, and then lock the length guide.

**7** Insert the tray.



**8** From the printer control panel, set the paper size and paper type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.

**Note:** Set the correct paper size and type to avoid paper jams and print quality problems.

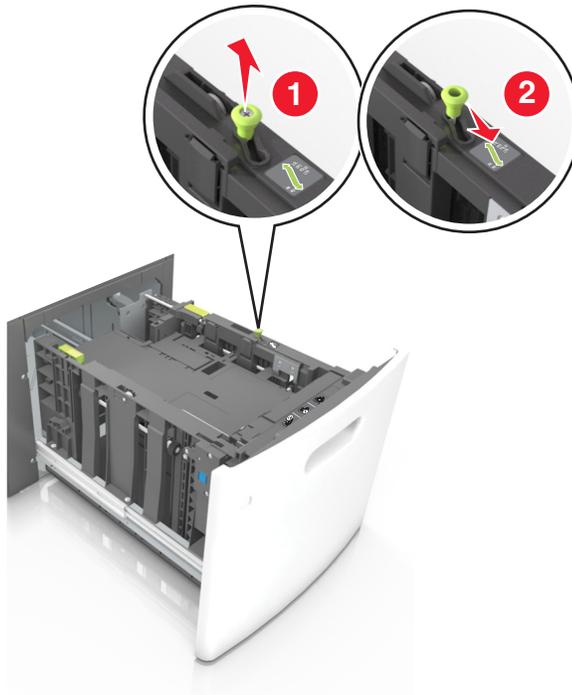
## Loading the 2100-sheet tray

**⚠ CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

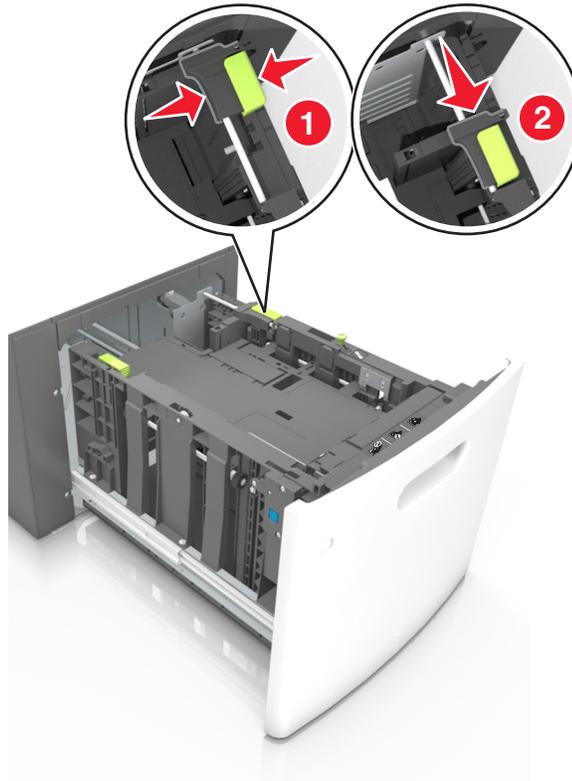
- 1 Pull out the tray.
- 2 Adjust the width and length guides.

### Loading A5-size paper

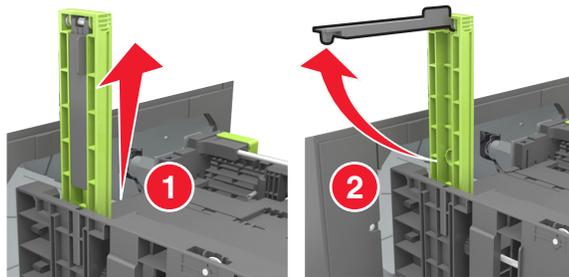
- a Pull up and slide the width guide to the position for A5.



- b** Squeeze and slide the length guide to the position for A5 until it *clicks* into place.

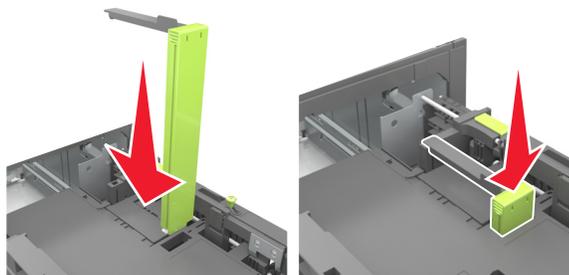


- c** Remove the A5 length guide from its holder.



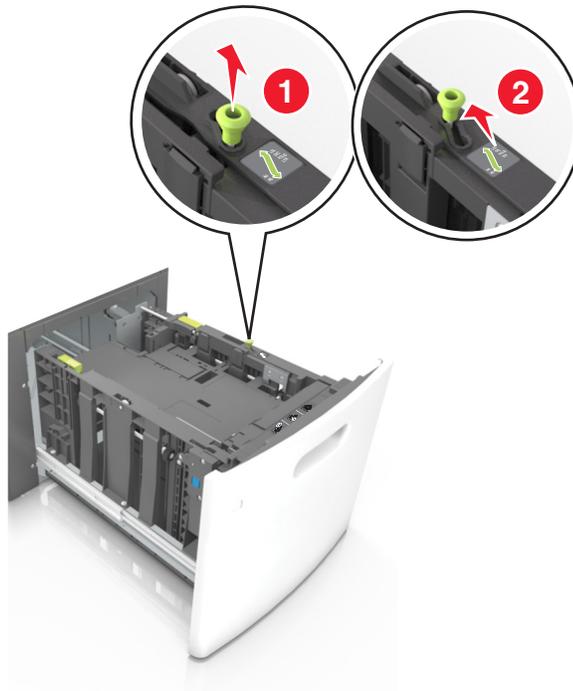
- d** Insert the A5 length guide into its designated slot.

**Note:** Press the A5 length guide until it *clicks* into place.

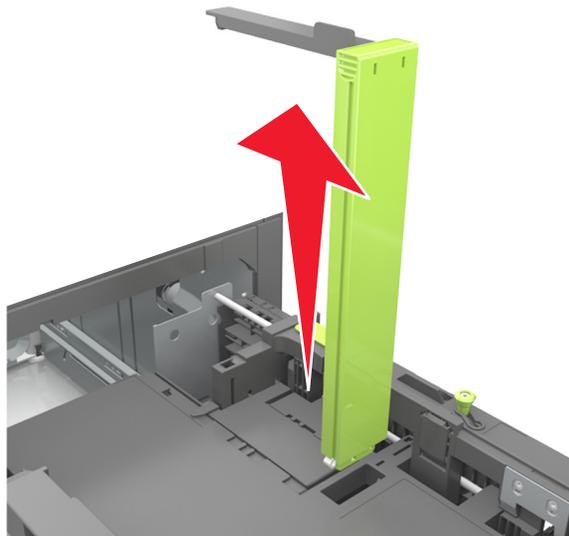


**Loading A4-, letter-, legal-, Oficio-, and Folio-size paper**

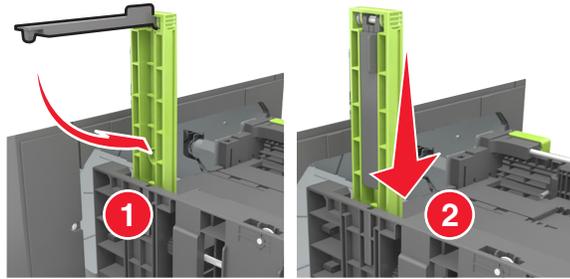
- a Pull up and slide the width guide to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded.



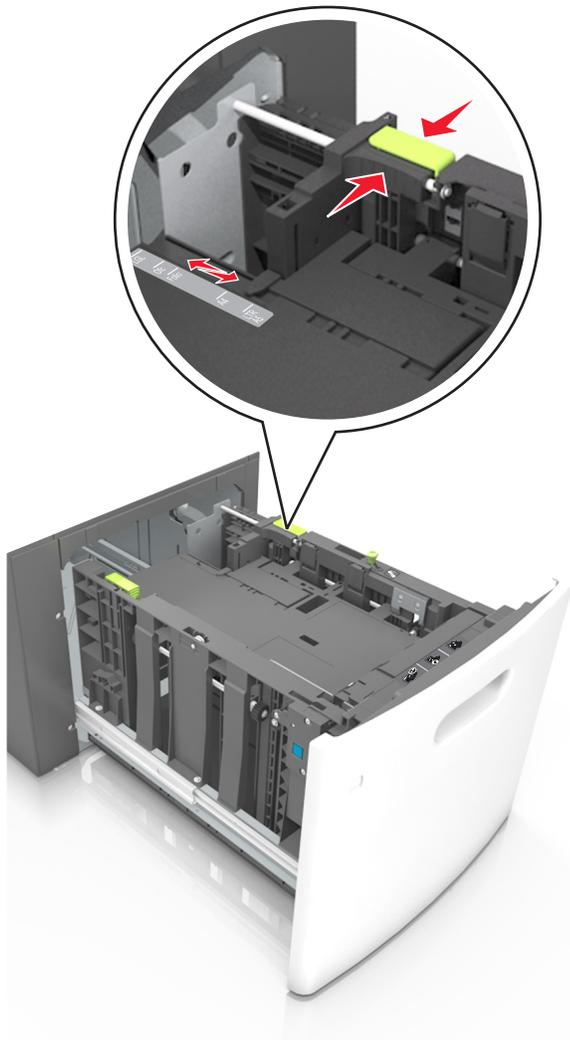
- b If the A5 length guide is still attached to the length guide, then remove it from its place. If the A5 length guide is not attached, then proceed to step d.



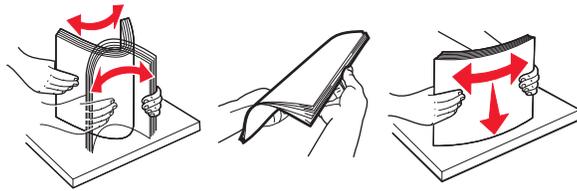
- c Put the A5 length guide in its holder.



- d Squeeze the length guide and slide it to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded until it *clicks* into place.



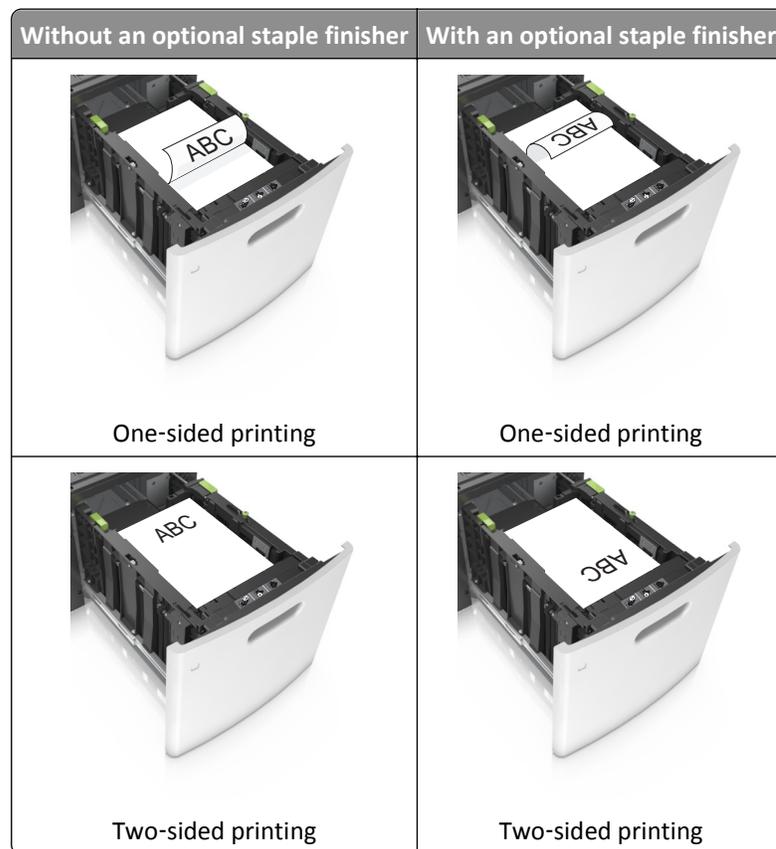
- 3 Flex sheets of paper back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



- 4 Load the paper stack with the printable side facedown.

**Note:** Make sure the paper is loaded properly.

- There are different ways of loading letterhead depending on whether an optional staple finisher is installed or not.

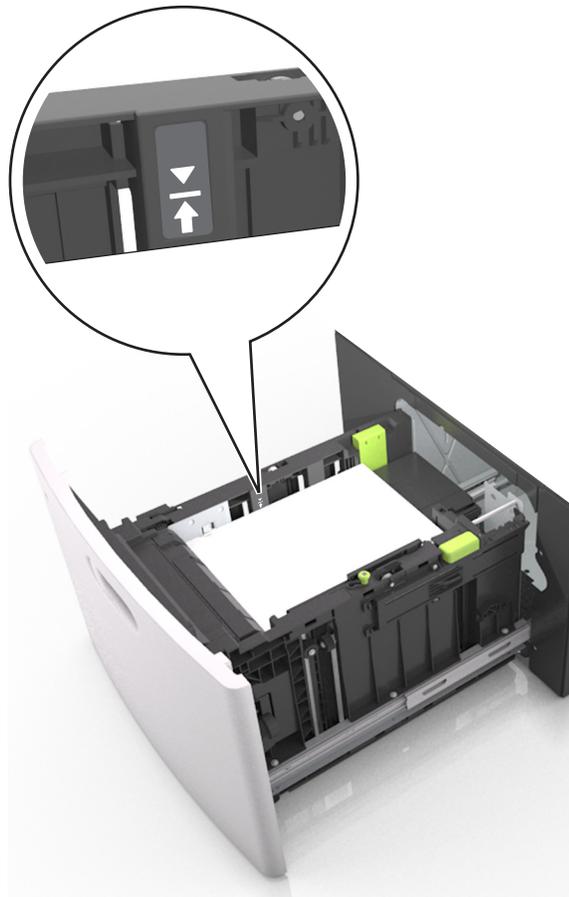


- If you are loading prepunched paper for use with the staple finisher, then make sure the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the right side of the tray.



**Note:** If the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the left side of the tray, then a jam may occur.

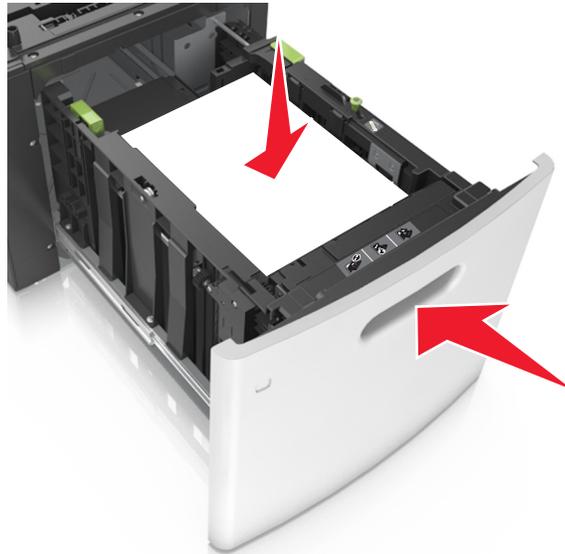
- Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Overfilling the tray can cause paper jams.

**5** Insert the tray.

**Note:** Press the paper stack down while inserting the tray.



- 6 From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.

**Note:** Set the correct paper size and type to avoid paper jams and print quality problems.

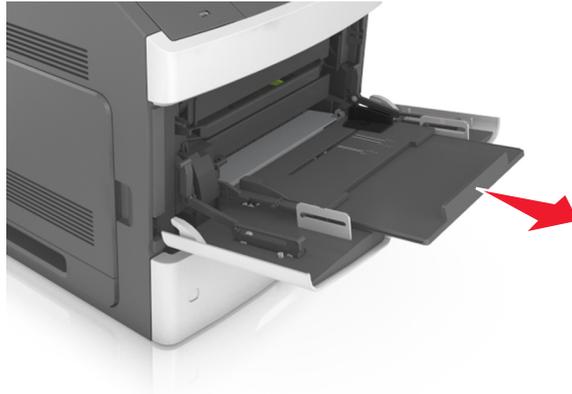
## Loading the multipurpose feeder

- 1 Pull down the multipurpose feeder door.

**Note:** Do not load or close the multipurpose feeder while a job is printing.

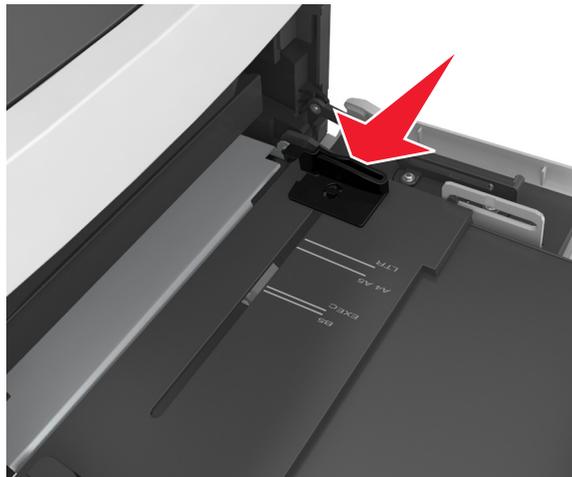


- 2 Pull the multipurpose feeder extender.

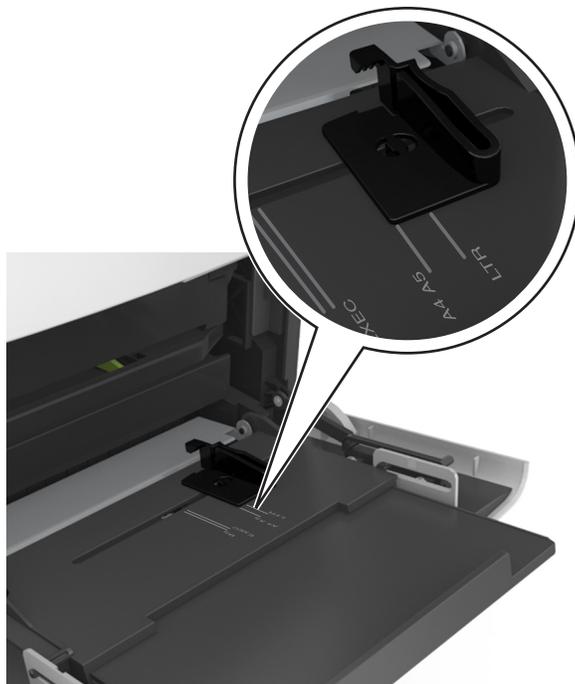


**Note:** Guide the extender gently so that the multipurpose feeder is fully extended and open.

- 3 Slide the width guide to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded.

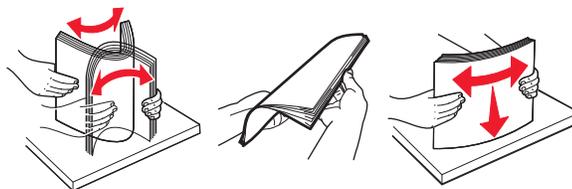


**Note:** Use the paper size indicators on the bottom of tray to help position the guides.



#### 4 Prepare the paper or specialty media for loading.

- Flex sheets of paper back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



- Hold transparencies by the edges, and then fan them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



**Note:** Avoid touching the printable side of the transparencies. Be careful not to scratch them.

- Flex the stack of envelopes back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

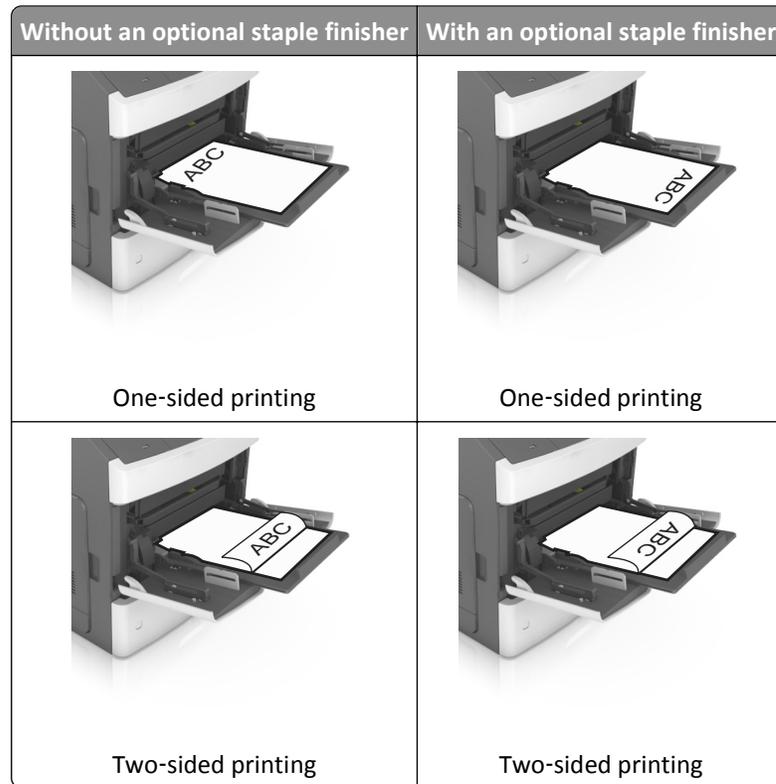


#### 5 Load the paper or specialty media.

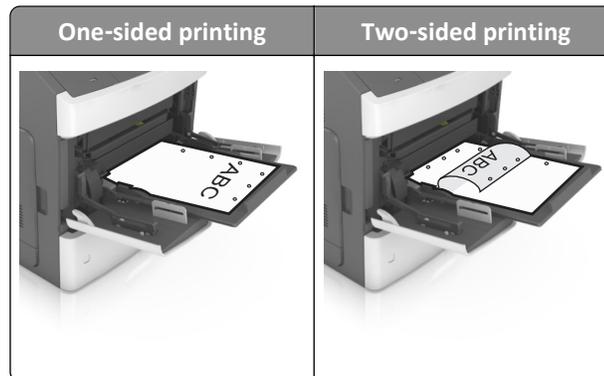
**Note:** Slide the stack gently into the multipurpose feeder until it comes to a stop.

- Load only one size and type of paper or specialty media at a time.
- Make sure the paper fits loosely in the multipurpose feeder, lies flat, and is not bent or wrinkled.

- There are different ways of loading letterhead depending on whether an optional staple finisher is installed or not.



- If you are loading prepunched paper for use with the staple finisher, then make sure the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the right side of the tray.



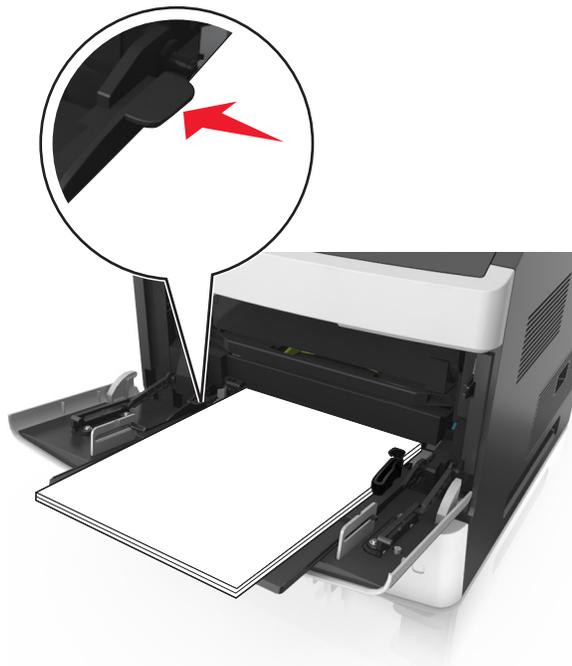
**Note:** If the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the left side of the tray, then a jam may occur.

- Load envelopes with the flap side down and on the left of the multipurpose feeder.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Never use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These envelopes may severely damage the printer.

- Make sure the paper or specialty media is below the maximum paper fill indicator.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Overfilling the feeder can cause paper jams.

- 6 For custom- or Universal-size paper, adjust the width guides to lightly touch the sides of the stack.
- 7 From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.

**Note:** Set the correct paper size and type to avoid paper jams and print quality problems.

## Linking and unlinking trays

### Linking and unlinking trays

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu**.

- 3 Change the paper size and type settings for the trays you are linking.

- To link trays, make sure the paper size and type for the tray match that of the other tray.
- To unlink trays, make sure the paper size or type for the tray does *not* match that of the other tray.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

**Note:** You can also change the paper size and type settings using the printer control panel. For more information, see [“Setting the paper size and type” on page 50](#).

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Paper loaded in the tray should match the paper type name assigned in the printer. The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified paper type. Printing issues may occur if settings are not properly configured.

## Creating a custom name for a paper type

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Names**.

- 3 Select a custom name, and then type a custom paper type name.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

- 5 Click **Custom Types**, and then verify if the new custom paper type name has replaced the custom name.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Paper Menu > Custom Names**

- 2 Select a custom name, and then type a custom paper type name.

3 Touch .

4 Touch **Custom Types**, and then verify that the new custom paper type name has replaced the custom name.

## Assigning a custom paper type

### Using the Embedded Web Server

Assign a custom paper type name to a tray when linking or unlinking trays.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Types**.

3 Select a custom paper type name, and then select a paper type

**Note:** Paper is the factory default paper type for all user-defined custom names.

4 Click **Submit**.

### Using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Paper Menu > Custom Types**

2 Select a custom paper type name, and then select a paper type

**Note:** Paper is the factory default paper type for all user-defined custom names.

3 Touch .

# Printing

## Printing forms and a document

### Printing forms

Use Forms and Favorites to quickly and easily access frequently used forms or other information that is regularly printed. Before you can use this application, first set it up on the printer. For more information, see [“Setting up Forms and Favorites” on page 48](#).

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

**Forms and Favorites** > select the form from the list > enter the number of copies > adjust other settings

2 Apply the changes.

## Printing a document

- 1 From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, set the paper type and size to match the paper loaded.
- 2 Send the print job:

### For Windows users

- a With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- b Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- c Adjust the settings, if necessary.
- d Click **OK > Print**.

### For Macintosh users

- a Customize the settings in the Page Setup dialog:
  - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Page Setup**.
  - 2 Choose a paper size or create a custom size to match the paper loaded.
  - 3 Click **OK**.
- b Customize the settings in the Print dialog:
  - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.  
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
  - 2 From the Print dialog and pop-up menus, adjust the settings if necessary.

**Note:** To print on a specific paper type, adjust the paper type setting to match the paper loaded, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.

- 3 Click **Print**.

## Adjusting toner darkness

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Toner Darkness**.
- 3 Adjust the setting, and then click **Submit**.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Toner Darkness**

- 2 Adjust the setting, and then touch .

## Printing from a flash drive or mobile device

### Printing from a flash drive

#### Notes:

- Before printing an encrypted PDF file, you will be prompted to type the file password from the printer control panel.
- You cannot print files for which you do not have printing permissions.

**1** Insert a flash drive into the USB port.

#### Notes:

- A flash drive icon appears on the printer home screen when a flash drive is inserted.
- If you insert the flash drive when the printer requires attention, such as when a jam has occurred, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then **Busy** appears. After these print jobs are processed, you may need to view the held jobs list to print documents from the flash drive.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the printer or the flash drive in the area shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device. Loss of data can occur.



**2** From the printer control panel, touch the document you want to print.

**3** Touch the arrows to specify the number of copies for printing, and then touch **Print**.

#### Notes:

- Do not remove the flash drive from the USB port until the document has finished printing.
- If you leave the flash drive in the printer after leaving the initial USB menu screen, then touch **Held Jobs** on the home screen to print files from the flash drive.

### Printing from a mobile device

To download a compatible mobile printing application, visit [www.lexmark.com/mobile](http://www.lexmark.com/mobile).

**Note:** Mobile printing applications may also be available from your mobile device manufacturer.

### Supported flash drives and file types

**Notes:**

- High-speed USB flash drives must support the full-speed standard. Low-speed USB devices are not supported.
- USB flash drives must support the File Allocation Table (FAT) system. Devices formatted with New Technology File System (NTFS) or any other file system are not supported.

Recommended flash drives	File type
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lexar JumpDrive FireFly (512MB and 1GB)</li> <li>• SanDisk Cruzer Micro (512MB and 1GB)</li> <li>• Sony Micro Vault Classic (512MB and 1GB)</li> </ul>	<p>Documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• .pdf</li> <li>• .xps</li> </ul> <p>Images:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• .dcm</li> <li>• .gif</li> <li>• .jpeg or .jpg</li> <li>• .bmp</li> <li>• .pcx</li> <li>• .tiff or .tif</li> <li>• .png</li> <li>• .fls</li> </ul>

### Printing confidential and other held jobs

#### Storing print jobs in the printer

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Security** > **Confidential Print** > select a print job type

Use	To
Max Invalid PIN	Limit the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered. <b>Note:</b> When the limit is reached, the print jobs for that user name and PIN are deleted.
Confidential Job Expiration	Hold print jobs in the computer until you enter the PIN from the printer control panel. <b>Note:</b> The PIN is set from the computer. It must be four digits, using the numbers 0–9.
Repeat Job Expiration	Print and store print jobs in the printer memory.
Verify Job Expiration	Print one copy of a print job and hold the remaining copies. It lets you examine if the first copy is satisfactory or not. The print job is automatically deleted from the printer memory when all copies are printed.
Reserve Job Expiration	Store print jobs for printing at a later time. <b>Note:</b> The print jobs are held until deleted from the Held Jobs menu.
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs.</li> <li>• You can set the printer to store print jobs in the printer memory until you start the print job from the printer control panel.</li> <li>• All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called <i>held jobs</i>.</li> </ul>	

2 Touch .

## Printing confidential and other held jobs

**Note:** Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after printing. Repeat and Reserve jobs are *held* in the printer until you delete them.

### For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- 2 Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- 3 Click **Print and Hold**.
- 4 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 5 Click **OK** or **Print**.
- 6 From the printer home screen, release the print job.
  - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > Confidential Jobs > enter the PIN > Print**
  - For other print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > Print**

### For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.  
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
- 2 From the print options or Copies & Pages pop-up menu, choose **Job Routing**.
- 3 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 4 Click **OK** or **Print**.
- 5 From the printer home screen, release the print job.
  - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs** > select your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > enter the PIN > **Print**
  - For other print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs** > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > **Print**

## Printing information pages

### Printing a font sample list

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Reports > Print Fonts**

- 2 Touch **PCL Fonts** or **PostScript Fonts**.

### Printing a directory list

A directory list shows the resources stored in a flash memory or in the printer hard disk.

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Reports > Print Directory**

## Canceling a print job

### Canceling a print job from the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, touch **Cancel Jobs**, or press  on the keypad.
- 2 Touch the job you want to cancel, and then touch .
- 3 Press  on the keypad to return to the home screen.

## Canceling a print job from the computer

### For Windows users

- 1 Open the printers folder, and then select your printer.
- 2 From the print queue, select the print job you want to cancel, and then delete it.

### For Macintosh users

- 1 From System Preferences in the Apple menu, navigate to your printer.
- 2 From the print queue, select the print job you want to cancel, and then delete it.

## Managing your printer

### Finding advanced networking and administrator information

This chapter covers basic administrative support tasks using the Embedded Web Server. For more advanced system support tasks, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software CD* or the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

### Checking the virtual display

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Check the virtual display that appears at the top left corner of the screen.

The virtual display works as an actual display would work on a printer control panel.

### Configuring supply notifications from the Embedded Web Server

You can determine how you would like to be notified when supplies run nearly low, low, very low, or reach their end-of-life by setting the selectable alerts.

#### Notes:

- Selectable alerts can be set on the toner cartridge, imaging unit, and maintenance kit.
- All selectable alerts can be set for nearly low, low, and very low supply conditions. Not all selectable alerts can be set for the end-of-life supply condition. E-mail selectable alert is available for all supply conditions.
- The percentage of estimated remaining supply that prompts the alert can be set on some supplies for some supply conditions.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Settings > Print Settings > Supply Notifications**.

**3** From the drop-down menu for each supply, select one of the following notification options:

Notification	Description
Off	The normal printer behavior for all supplies occurs.
E-mail Only	The printer generates an e-mail when the supply condition is reached. The status of the supply appears on the menus page and status page.
Warning	The printer displays the warning message and generates an e-mail about the status of the supply. The printer does not stop when the supply condition is reached.
Continuable Stop <sup>1</sup>	The printer stops processing jobs when the supply condition is reached, and the user needs to press a button to continue printing.
Non Continuable Stop <sup>1,2</sup>	The printer stops processing jobs when the supply condition is reached. The supply must be replaced to continue printing.
<sup>1</sup> The printer generates an e-mail about the status of the supply when supply notification is enabled.	
<sup>2</sup> The printer stops when some supplies become empty to prevent damage.	

**4** Click **Submit**.

## Modifying confidential print settings

**1** Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Settings > Security > Confidential Print Setup**.

**3** Modify the settings:

- Set a maximum number of PIN entry attempts. When a user exceeds that number, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.
- Set an expiration time for confidential print jobs. When a user has not printed the jobs within that time, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.

**4** Click **Submit** to save the modified settings.

## Copying printer settings to other printers

**Note:** This feature is available only in network printers.

**1** Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Copy Printer Settings**.

**3** To change the language, select a language from the drop-down menu, and then click **Click here to submit language**.

**4** Click **Printer Settings**.

**5** Type the IP addresses of the source and target printers.

**Note:** If you want to add or remove target printers, then click **Add Target IP** or **Remove Target IP**.

**6** Click **Copy Printer Settings**.

## Printing a menu settings page

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Reports** > **Menu Settings Page**

## Printing a network setup page

If the printer is attached to a network, then print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

**1** From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Reports** > **Network Setup Page**

**2** Check the first section of the network setup page and confirm that the status is Connected.

If the status is Not Connected, then the LAN drop may not be active, or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Consult your system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.

## Checking the status of parts and supplies

A message appears on the printer display when a replacement supply item is needed or when maintenance is required.

### Checking the status of parts and supplies on the printer control panel

From the home screen, touch **Status/Supplies** > **View Supplies**.

### Checking the status of parts and supplies from the Embedded Web Server

**Note:** Make sure the computer and the printer are connected to the same network.

**1** Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Device Status > More Details**.

## Saving energy

### Using Eco-Mode

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Eco-Mode**.

3 Select a setting.

Use	To
Off	Use the factory default settings for all settings associated with Eco-Mode.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Settings that were changed when other modes were selected are reset to the factory default settings.</li> <li>• Off supports the performance specifications of the printer.</li> </ul>
Energy	Reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printer engine motors do not start until a document is ready to print. You may notice a short delay before the first page is printed.</li> <li>• The printer enters Sleep mode after one minute of inactivity.</li> <li>• The printer display is turned off when the printer is in Sleep mode.</li> <li>• Lights on the staple finisher and other optional finishers are turned off when the printer is in Sleep mode.</li> </ul>
Energy/Paper	Use all the settings associated with Energy and Paper modes.
Plain Paper	Enable the automatic two-sided (duplex) printing feature.

4 Click **Submit**.

### Reducing printer noise

Enable Quiet mode to reduce printer noise.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Settings > General Settings > Quiet Mode**.

**3** Select a setting.

Use	To
On	Reduce printer noise. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Print jobs process at a reduced speed.</li> <li>• Printer engine motors do not start until a document is ready to print. There is a short delay before the first page is printed.</li> <li>• The alarm control and cartridge alarm sounds are turned off.</li> <li>• The printer ignores the Advance Start command.</li> </ul>
Off	Use factory default settings. <b>Note:</b> This setting supports the performance specifications of the printer.

**4** Click **Submit**.

## Using Hibernate mode

Hibernate is an ultra-low-power saving mode.

### Notes:

- Three days is the default amount of time before the printer enters Hibernate mode.
- Make sure to wake the printer from Hibernate mode before sending a print job. A hard reset or a long press of the Sleep button wakes the printer from Hibernate mode.
- If the printer is in Hibernate mode, then the Embedded Web Server is disabled.

**1** From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings > General Settings**

**2** Touch **Press Sleep Button** or **Press and Hold Sleep Button**.

**3** Touch **Hibernate** > .

## Restoring factory default settings

If you want to keep a list of the current menu settings for reference, then print a menu settings page before restoring the factory default settings. For more information, see [“Printing a menu settings page” on page 77](#).

If you want a more comprehensive method of restoring the printer factory default settings, then perform the Wipe All Settings option. For more information, see [“Erasing non-volatile memory” on page 81](#).

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Restoring factory defaults returns most printer settings to the original factory default settings. Exceptions include the display language, custom sizes and messages, and network/port menu settings. All downloads stored in the RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in the flash memory or in a printer hard disk are not affected.

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > Settings > General Settings > Factory Defaults > Restore Now > 

## Securing the printer

### Using the security lock feature

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. When a lock compatible with most laptop computers is attached, the printer is locked. When locked, the controller board shield and the controller board cannot be removed. Attach a security lock to the printer in the location shown.



### Statement of Volatility

Your printer contains various types of memory that can store device and network settings, and user data.

Type of memory	Description
Volatile memory	Your printer uses standard <i>random access memory</i> (RAM) to temporarily buffer user data during simple print jobs.
Non-volatile memory	Your printer may use two forms of non-volatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types are used to store the operating system, device settings, network information, bookmark settings, and embedded solutions.
Hard disk memory	Some printers have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for device-specific functionality. This lets the device retain buffered user data from complex print jobs, as well as form data, and font data.

Erase the content of any installed printer memory in the following circumstances:

- The printer is being decommissioned.
- The printer hard disk is being replaced.
- The printer is being moved to a different department or location.
- The printer is being serviced by someone from outside your organization.
- The printer is being removed from your premises for service.
- The printer is being sold to another organization.

### Disposing of a printer hard disk

**Note:** Some printer models may not have a printer hard disk installed.

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to make sure that confidential data stored in the printer hard disk cannot be accessed when the printer—or its hard disk—is removed from your premises.

- **Degaussing**—Flushes the hard disk with a magnetic field that erases stored data
- **Crushing**—Physically compresses the hard disk to break component parts and render them unreadable
- **Milling**—Physically shreds the hard disk into small metal bits

**Note:** Most data can be erased electronically, but the only way to guarantee that all data is completely erased is to physically destroy each hard disk where data is stored.

### Erasing volatile memory

The volatile memory (RAM) installed in your printer requires a power source to retain information. To erase the buffered data, simply turn off the printer.

### Erasing non-volatile memory

Erase individual settings, device and network settings, security settings, and embedded solutions by following these steps:

- 1** Turn off the printer.
- 2** Hold down **2** and **6** on the keypad while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully turned on, a list of functions appears on the printer display instead of the standard home screen icons.

- 3** Touch **Wipe All Settings**.

The printer will restart several times during this process.

**Note:** Wipe All Settings securely removes device settings, solutions, jobs, and passwords from the printer memory.

- 4** Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

## Erasing printer hard disk memory

### Notes:

- Some printer models may not have a printer hard disk installed.
- Configuring Erase Temporary Data Files in the printer menus lets you remove residual confidential material left by print jobs by securely overwriting files that have been marked for deletion.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Hold down **2** and **6** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully turned on, the touch screen displays a list of functions.

- 3 Touch **Wipe Disk**, and then touch one of the following:
  - **Wipe disk (fast)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with all zeroes in a single pass.
  - **Wipe disk (secure)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.
- 4 Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping.

### Notes:

- A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task.
- Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

- 5 Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

## Configuring printer hard disk encryption

Enable hard disk encryption to prevent loss of sensitive data in the event the printer or its hard disk is stolen.

**Note:** Some printer models may not have a printer hard disk installed.

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Security > Disk Encryption**.

**Note:** Disk Encryption appears in the Security Menu only when a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.

- 3 From the Disk encryption menu, select **Enable**.

**Notes:**

- Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

**4** Click **Submit**.**Using the printer control panel****1** Turn off the printer.**2** Hold down **2** and **6** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully turned on, a list of functions appears on the printer display.

**3** Touch **Disk Encryption > Enable**.

**Note:** Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.

**4** Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping.**Notes:**

- Do not turn off the printer during the encryption process. Doing so may result in loss of data.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.
- A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task. After the disk has been encrypted, the printer will return to the Enable/Disable screen.

**5** Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

**Finding printer security information**

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to make sure that confidential data stored in the printer cannot be accessed by unauthorized persons. For more information, visit the [Lexmark security Web page](#).

You can also see the *Embedded Web Server — Security: Administrator's Guide* for additional information:

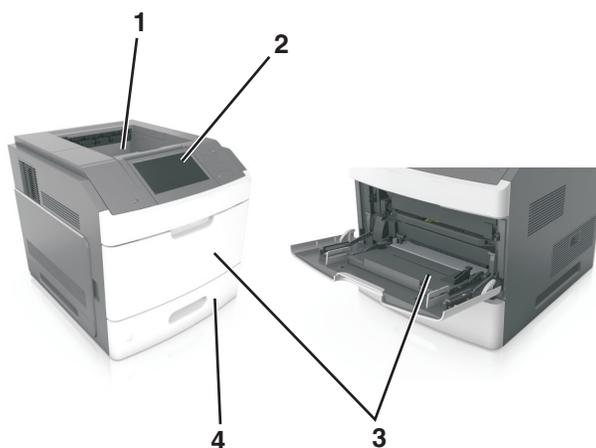
**1** Go to [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com), and then navigate to **Support & Downloads** > select your printer.**2** Click the **Manuals** tab, and then select *Embedded Web Server — Security: Administrator's Guide*.

# Using M5170

## Learning about the printer

### Printer configurations

#### Basic model



1	Standard bin
2	Printer control panel
3	Multipurpose feeder
4	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)

#### Fully configured model

**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using multiple input options. If you purchased a printer with a similar configuration, then you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

The following illustration shows the maximum number of optional finishers and trays that are supported by the printer. For more information on other configurations, visit [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

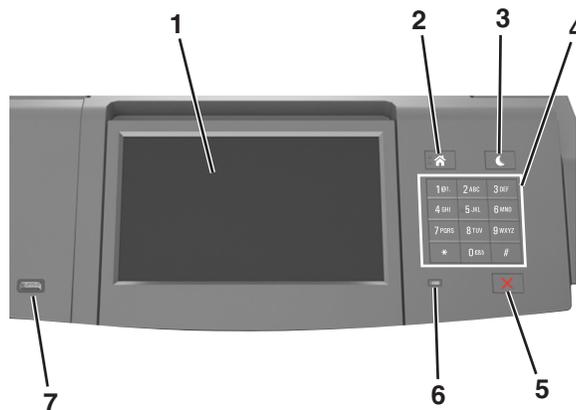


	Hardware option	Alternative hardware option
1	Staple finisher	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Output expander</li> <li>• 4-bin mailbox</li> <li>• Staple, hole punch finisher</li> </ul>
2	4-bin mailbox	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Staple finisher</li> <li>• Staple, hole punch finisher</li> <li>• Output expander</li> </ul>
3	Caster base	None
4	2100-sheet tray	None
5	550-sheet tray	250-sheet tray
6	250-sheet tray	550-sheet tray
7	4-bin mailbox	Output expander
8	Output expander	4-bin mailbox

The staple, hole punch finisher must not be combined with any other output options.

- In a configuration with three optional finishers, the output expander and mailbox may be installed in any order.
- In a configuration with two optional finishers:
  - The staple finisher must always be on top.
  - The high-capacity output expander must always be at the bottom.
  - The output expander is the only option that can be placed on top of the high-capacity output expander.
- When using optional trays:
  - Always use a caster base when the printer is configured with a 2100-sheet tray.
  - The 2100-sheet tray must always be at the bottom of a configuration.
  - A maximum of four optional trays may be configured with the printer.
  - The optional 250- and 550-sheet trays may be installed in any order.

### Using the printer control panel



	Use the	To
1	Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• View the status of the printer.</li> <li>• Set up and operate the printer.</li> </ul>
2	Home button	Go to the home screen.
3	Sleep button	Enable Sleep mode or Hibernate mode. Do the following to wake the printer from Sleep mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press and release the Sleep button.</li> <li>• Touch the screen or press any hard button.</li> <li>• Open a tray, cover, or door.</li> <li>• Send a print job from the computer.</li> <li>• Perform a power-on reset with the main power switch.</li> <li>• Attach a device to a USB port.</li> </ul>
4	Keypad	Enter numbers, letters, or symbols on the printer.
5	Stop or Cancel button	Stop all printer activity.
6	Indicator light	Check the status of the printer.

	Use the	To
7	USB port	Connect a USB Bluetooth adapter or a flash drive to the printer. <b>Note:</b> Only the front USB port supports flash drives.

## Understanding the colors of the Sleep button and indicator lights

The colors of the Sleep button and indicator lights on the printer control panel signify a certain printer status or condition.

Indicator light	Printer status
Off	The printer is off or in Hibernate mode.
Blinking green	The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing.
Solid green	The printer is on, but idle.
Blinking red	The printer requires user intervention.

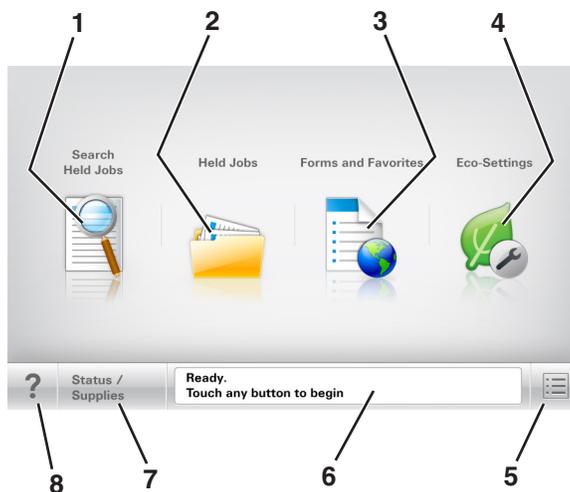
  

Sleep button light	Printer status
Off	The printer is off, idle or in Ready state.
Solid amber	The printer is in Sleep mode.
Blinking amber	The printer is entering or waking from Hibernate mode.
Blinking amber for 0.1 second, then goes completely off for 1.9 seconds in a slow, pulsing pattern	The printer is in Hibernate mode.

## Understanding the home screen

When the printer is turned on, the display shows a basic screen, referred to as the home screen. Use the home screen buttons and icons to initiate an action.

**Note:** Your home screen may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.



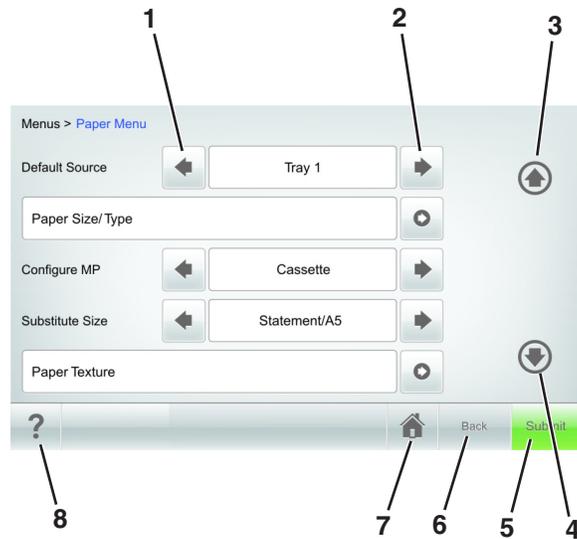
	Touch	To
1	Search Held Jobs	Search current held jobs.
2	Held Jobs	Display all current held jobs.
3	Forms and Favorites	Access frequently used online forms.
4	Eco-Settings	Adjust energy consumption, noise, toner and paper usage.
5	Menus	Access printer menus. <b>Note:</b> These menus are available only when the printer is in Ready state.
6	Status message bar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Show the current printer status such as <b>Ready</b> or <b>Busy</b>.</li> <li>• Show printer conditions such as <b>Imaging unit low</b> or <b>Cartridge Low</b>.</li> <li>• Show intervention messages and the instructions on how to clear them.</li> </ul>
7	Status/Supplies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Show a printer warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing.</li> <li>• View more information on the printer warning or message, and on how to clear it.</li> </ul>
8	Tips	Open a context-sensitive Help information on the printer control panel.

## Features

Feature	Description
Attendance message alert 	If an attendance message affects a function, then this icon appears and the red indicator light blinks.
Warning 	If an error condition occurs, then this icon appears.
Printer IP address Example: 123 . 123 . 123 . 123	The IP address of your network printer is located at the top left corner of the home screen and appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods. You can use the IP address when accessing the Embedded Web Server so you can view and remotely configure printer settings even when you are not physically near the printer.

## Using the touch-screen buttons

**Note:** Your home screen, icons, and buttons may vary, depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.



	Touch	To
1	Left arrow 	Scroll to the left.
2	Right arrow 	Scroll to the right.
3	Up arrow 	Scroll up.
4	Down arrow 	Scroll down.
5	<b>Submit</b>	Submit changes made in the printer settings.
6	<b>Back</b>	Return to the previous screen.
7	Home 	Return to the home screen.
8	Tips 	Open a context-sensitive Help dialog on the printer control panel.

**Other touch-screen buttons**

Touch	To
Accept 	Save settings.
Cancel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Cancel an action or a selection.</li><li>• Leave a screen and return to the previous screen without saving changes.</li></ul>
Increase 	Select a higher value.
Decrease 	Select a lower value.
Exit 	Leave the current screen.
Search 	Search current held jobs.
Warning 	View a warning or error message.

# Setting up and using the home screen applications

## Notes:

- Your home screen may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded applications. Some applications are supported only in some printer models.
- There may be additional solutions and applications available for purchase. For more information, go to [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

## Finding the IP address of the computer

### For Windows users

- 1 In the Run dialog box, type `cmd` to open the command prompt.
- 2 Type `ipconfig`, and then look for the IP address.

### For Macintosh users

- 1 From System Preferences in the Apple menu, select **Network**.
- 2 Select your connection type, and then click **Advanced > TCP/IP**.
- 3 Look for the IP address.

## Finding the IP address of the printer

**Note:** Make sure your printer is connected to a network or to a print server.

You can find the printer IP address:

- From the top left corner of the printer home screen.
- From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu.
- By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section.

**Note:** An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

## Accessing the Embedded Web Server

The Embedded Web Server is the printer Web page that lets you view and remotely configure printer settings even when you are not physically near the printer.

- 1 Obtain the printer IP address:
  - From the printer control panel home screen
  - From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu
  - By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section

**Note:** An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123 . 123 . 123 . 123 .

- 2 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.
- 3 Press **Enter**.

**Note:** If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

## Customizing the home screen

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:** View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 Do one or more of the following:

- Show or hide icons of basic printer functions.
  - a Click **Settings > General Settings > Home screen customization**.
  - b Select the check boxes to specify which icons appear on the printer home screen.

**Note:** If you clear a check box beside an icon, then the icon does not appear on the home screen.

- c Click **Submit**.
- Customize the icon for an application. For more information, see [“Finding information about the home screen applications” on page 92](#) or see the documentation that came with the application.

## Activating the home screen applications

### Finding information about the home screen applications

Your printer comes with preinstalled home screen applications. Before you can use these applications, you must first activate and set up these applications using the Embedded Web Server. For more information on accessing the Embedded Web Server, see [“Accessing the Embedded Web Server” on page 46](#).

For more information on configuring and using the home screen applications, do the following:

- 1 Go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.
- 2 Click **Software Solutions**, and then select either of the following:
  - **Scan to Network**—This lets you find information about the Scan to Network application.
  - **Other Applications**—This lets you find information about the other applications.
- 3 Click the **Manuals** tab, and then select the document for the home screen application.

### Using Background and Idle Screen

Use	To
	Customize the background and idle screen of your printer home screen.

From the home screen, navigate to:

**Change Background** > select background to use > **Apply**

## Setting up Forms and Favorites

**Note:** A later version of this *User's Guide* may contain a direct link to the *Administrator's Guide* of this application. To check for updates of this *User's Guide*, visit <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Use	To
	<p>Quickly find and print frequently used online forms directly from the printer home screen.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The printer must have permission to access the network folder, FTP site, or Web site where the bookmark is stored. From the computer where the bookmark is stored, use sharing, security, and firewall settings to allow the printer at least a <i>read</i> access. For help, see the documentation that came with your operating system.</p>

**1** Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:** View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

**2** Click **Settings > Apps > Apps Management > Forms and Favorites**.

**3** Click **Add**, and then customize the settings.

**Notes:**

- See the mouse-over help beside each field for a description of the setting.
- To make sure the location settings of the bookmark are correct, type the correct IP address of the host computer where the bookmark is located. For more information on obtaining the IP address of the host computer, see ["Finding the IP address of the computer" on page 46](#).
- Make sure the printer has access rights to the folder where the bookmark is located.

**4** Click **Apply**.

To use the application, touch **Forms and Favorites** on the printer home screen, and then navigate through form categories, or search for forms based on a form number, name, or description.

## Understanding Eco-Settings

Use	To
	<p>Manage energy consumption, noise, toner, and paper usage settings to help reduce the environmental impact of your printer.</p>

## Exporting and importing a configuration

You can export configuration settings into a text file, and then import the file to apply the settings to other printers.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:** View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 To export or import a configuration for one application, do the following:

- a Click **Settings > Apps > Apps Management**.

- b From the list of installed applications, click the name of the application you want to configure.

- c Click **Configure**, and then do either of the following:

- To export a configuration to a file, click **Export**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen to save the configuration file.

**Notes:**

- When saving the configuration file, you can type a unique file name or use the default name.
- If a "JVM Out of Memory" error occurs, then repeat the export process until the configuration file is saved.
- To import a configuration from a file, click **Import**, and then browse to the saved configuration file that was exported from a previously configured printer.

**Notes:**

- Before importing the configuration file, you can choose to preview it first or load it directly.
- If a timeout occurs and a blank screen appears, then refresh the Web browser, and then click **Apply**.

- 3 To export or import a configuration for multiple applications, do the following:

- a Click **Settings > Import/Export**.

- b Do either of the following:

- To export a configuration file, click **Export Embedded Solutions Settings File**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen to save the configuration file.

- To import a configuration file, do the following:

- 1 Click **Import Embedded Solutions Settings File > Choose File**, and then browse to the saved configuration file that was exported from a previously configured printer.

- 2 Click **Submit**.

## Setting up Remote Operator Panel

This application enables you to interact with the printer control panel even when you are not physically near the network printer. From your computer, you can view the printer status, release held print jobs, create bookmarks, and do other print-related tasks.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:** View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 Click **Settings > Remote Operator Panel Settings**.

3 Select the **Enable** check box, and then customize the settings.

4 Click **Submit**.

To use the application, click **Remote Operator Panel > Launch VNC Applet**.

## Loading paper and specialty media

The selection and handling of paper and specialty media can affect how reliably documents print. For more information, see [“Avoiding jams” on page 214](#) and [“Storing paper” on page 135](#).

### Setting the paper size and type

From the home screen navigate to:



> **Paper Menu > Paper Size/Type** > select a tray > select a paper size or type > **Submit**

#### Notes:

- The paper size is automatically set according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except the multipurpose feeder.
- The paper size for the multipurpose feeder must be set manually from the Paper Size menu.
- The paper type must be set manually for all trays that do not contain plain paper.

### Configuring Universal paper settings

Universal paper size is a user-defined setting that lets you print on paper sizes that are not preset in the printer menus.

#### Notes:

- The smallest supported Universal size is 70 x 127 mm (2.76 x 5 inches) for one-sided printing and 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 inches) for two-sided (duplex) printing.
- The largest supported Universal size is 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) for one-sided and two-sided printing.
- When printing on paper less than 210 mm (8.3 inches) wide, the printer may print at a reduced speed after a period of time to ensure the best print performance.
- If you regularly print large jobs on narrow paper, then you may use the MS710 Series printer models, which print batches of 10 or more pages of narrow paper at a faster speed. For more information on the MS710 Series printer models, contact your Lexmark sales representative.

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Paper Menu > Universal Setup > Units of Measure** > select a unit of measure

2 Touch **Portrait Width** or **Portrait Height**.

3 Select the width or height, and then touch **Submit**.

## Loading the 250- or 550-sheet tray

**⚠ CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

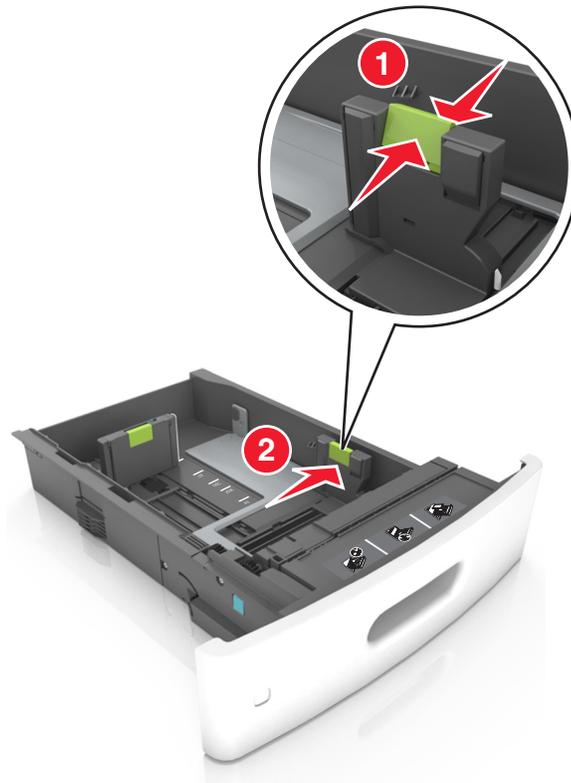
**1** Pull out the tray.

**Notes:**

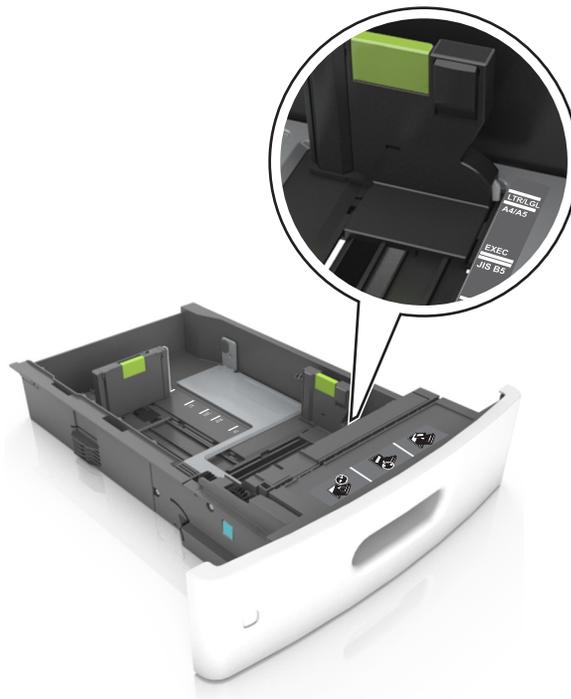
- When loading folio-, legal-, or Oficio-size paper, lift the tray slightly and then pull it out completely.
- Do not remove trays while a job prints or while **Busy** appears on the display. Doing so may cause a jam.



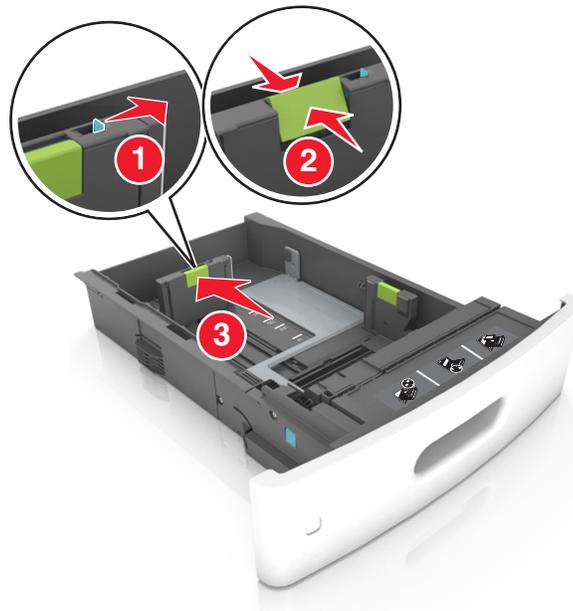
- 2 Squeeze and slide the width guide to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded until it *clicks* into place.



**Note:** Use the paper size indicators at the bottom of the tray to help position the guides.

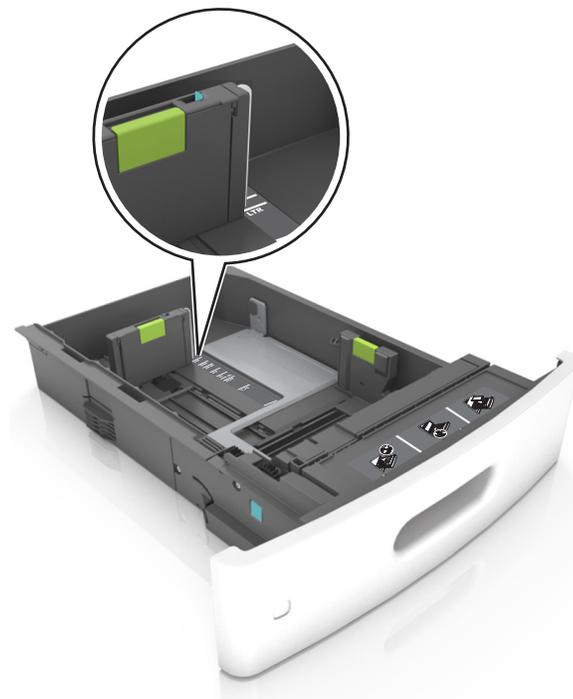


- 3** Unlock the length guide, and then squeeze and slide the guide to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded.

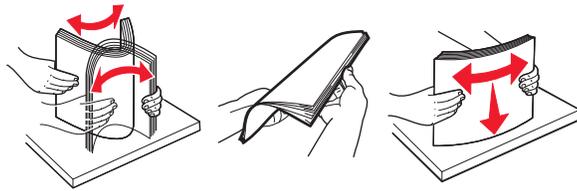


**Notes:**

- Lock the length guide for all paper sizes.
- Use the paper size indicators at the bottom of the tray to help position the guides.



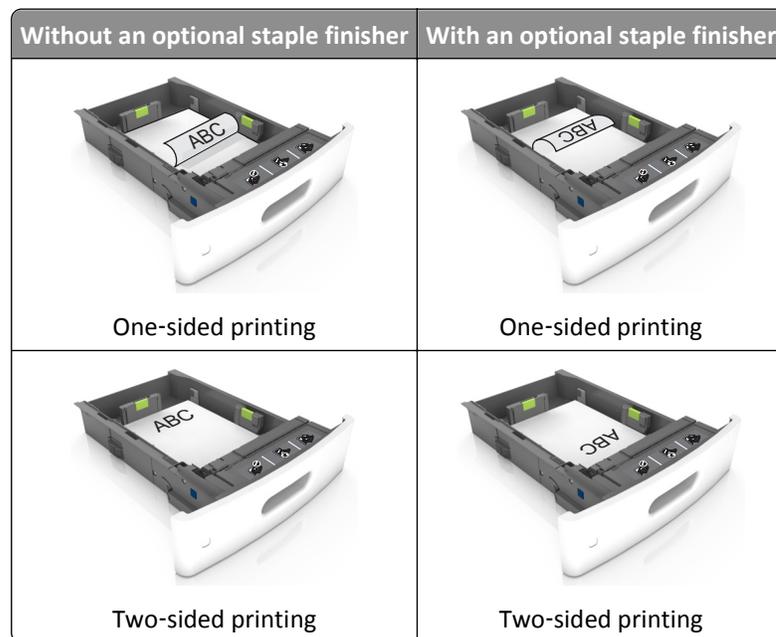
- 4 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



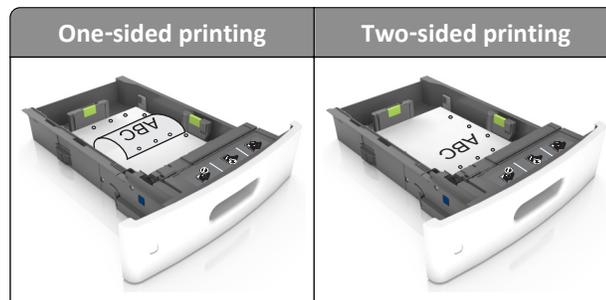
- 5 Load the paper stack with the printable side facedown.

**Note:** Make sure the paper or envelope is loaded properly.

- There are different ways of loading letterhead depending on whether an optional staple finisher is installed or not.

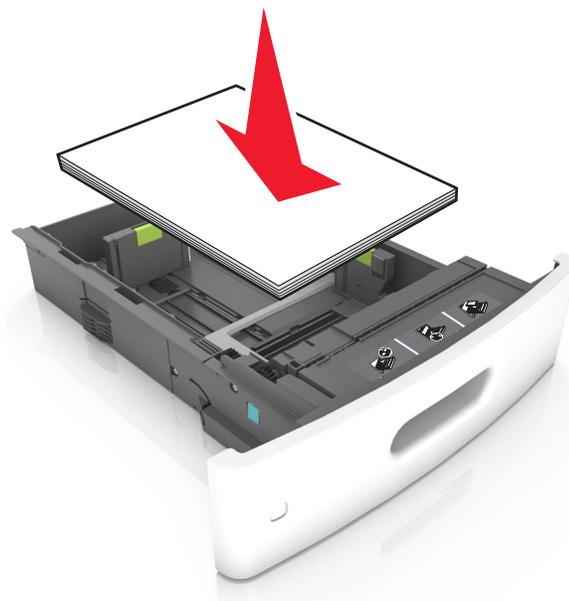


- If you are loading prepunched paper for use with the staple finisher, then make sure the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the right side of the tray.

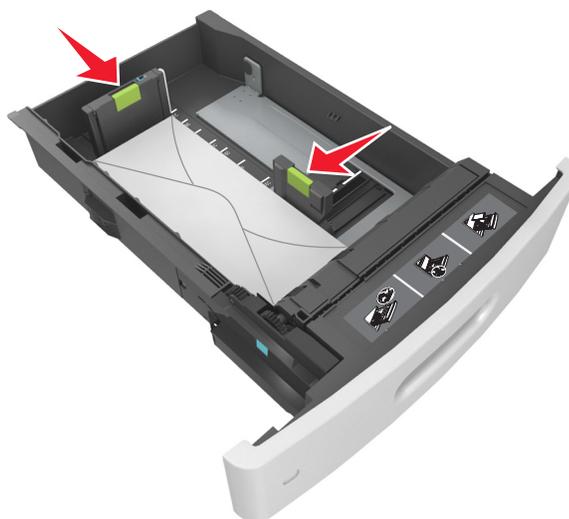


**Note:** If the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the left side of the tray, then a jam may occur.

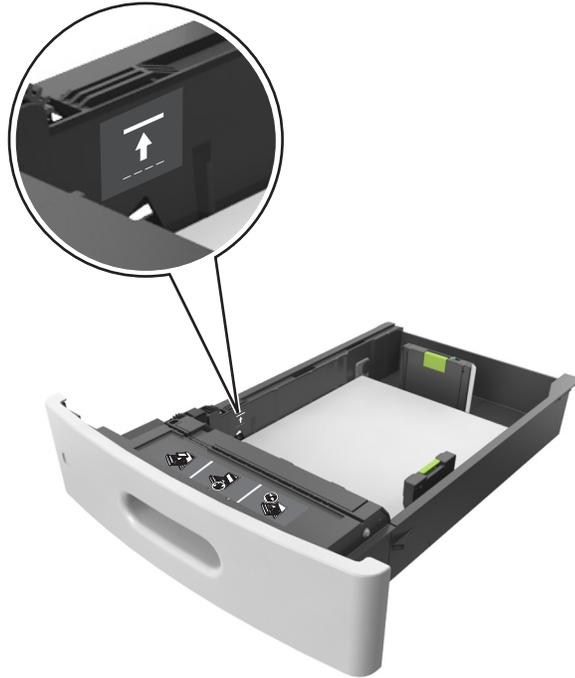
- Do not slide the paper into the tray. Load paper as shown in the illustration.



- If you are loading envelopes, then make sure that the flap side is facing up and the envelopes are on the left side of the tray.

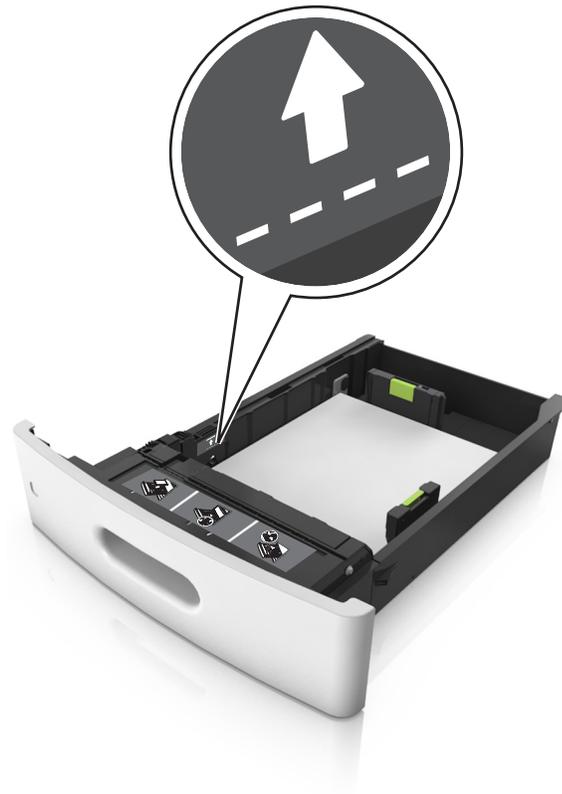


- Make sure the paper is below the solid line, which is the maximum paper fill indicator.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Overfilling the tray can cause paper jams.

- When using card stock, labels, or other types of specialty media, make sure the paper is below the dashed line, which is the alternate paper fill indicator.



- 6 For custom- or Universal-size paper, adjust the paper guides to lightly touch the sides of the stack, and then lock the length guide.
- 7 Insert the tray.



- 8 From the printer control panel, set the paper size and paper type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.

**Note:** Set the correct paper size and type to avoid paper jams and print quality problems.

## Loading the 2100-sheet tray

**⚠ CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

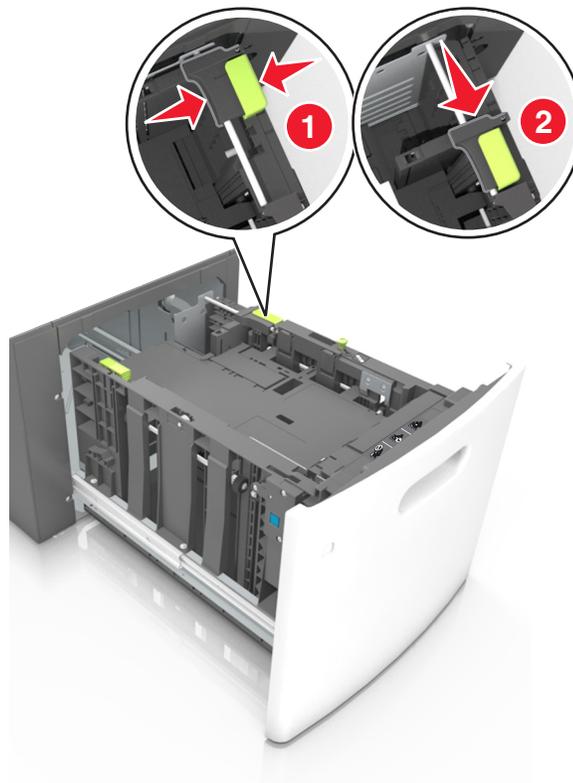
- 1 Pull out the tray.
- 2 Adjust the width and length guides.

**Loading A5-size paper**

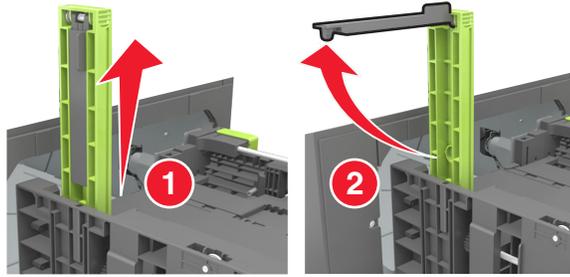
- a Pull up and slide the width guide to the position for A5.



- b Squeeze and slide the length guide to the position for A5 until it *clicks* into place.

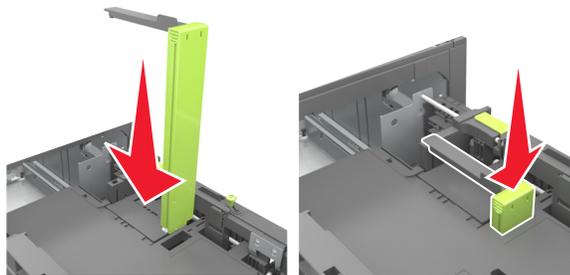


- c Remove the A5 length guide from its holder.



- d Insert the A5 length guide into its designated slot.

**Note:** Press the A5 length guide until it *clicks* into place.

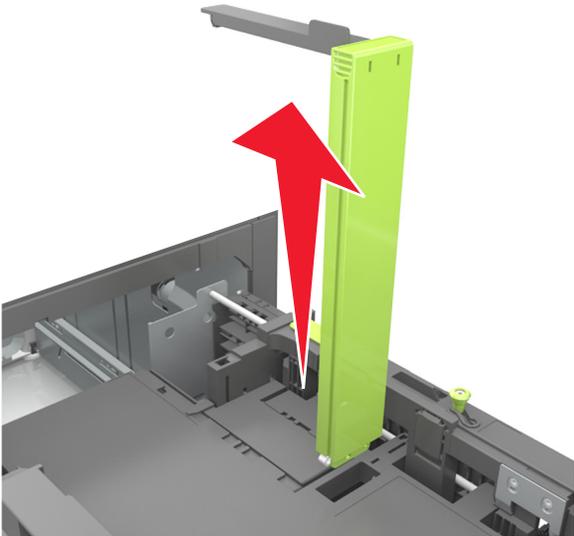


### Loading A4-, letter-, legal-, oficio-, and folio-size paper

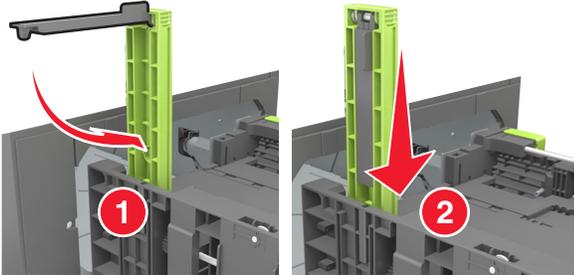
- a Pull up and slide the width guide to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded.



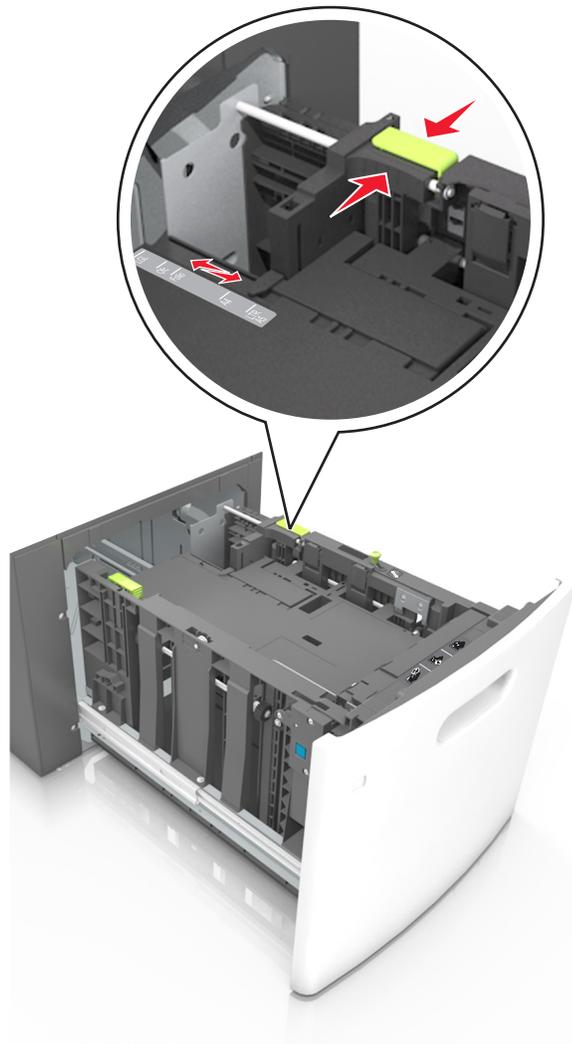
**b** If the A5 length guide is still attached to the length guide, then remove it from its place. If the A5 length guide is not attached, then proceed to step d.



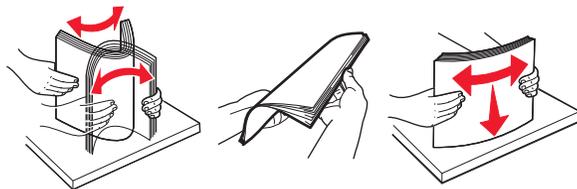
**c** Put the A5 length guide in its holder.



- d Squeeze the length guide and slide it to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded until it *clicks* into place.



- 3 Flex sheets of paper back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



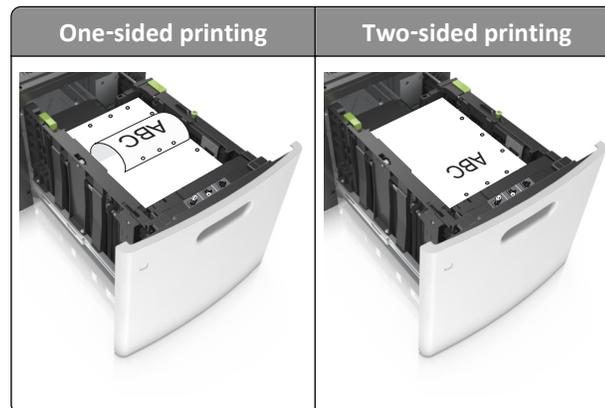
- 4 Load the paper stack with the printable side facedown.

**Note:** Make sure the paper is loaded properly.

- There are different ways of loading letterhead depending on whether an optional staple finisher is installed or not.

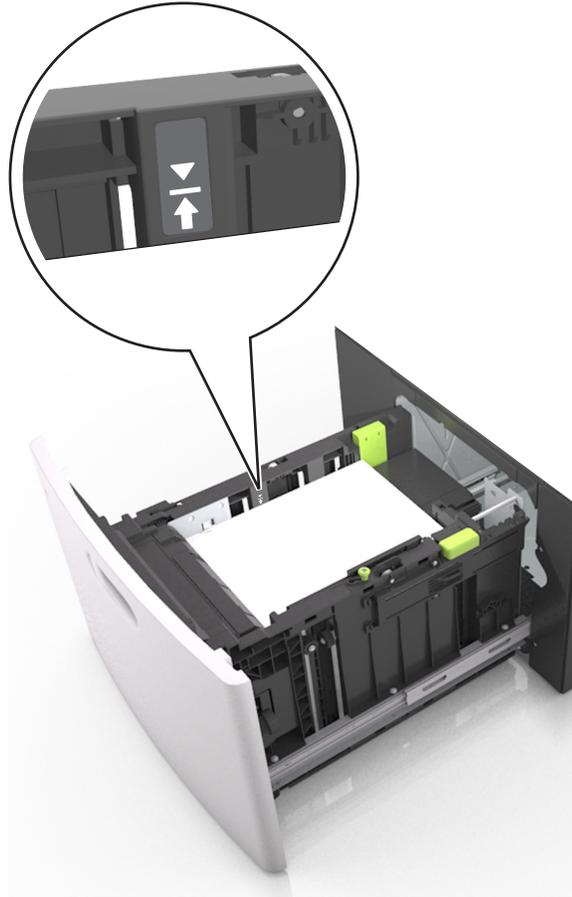


- If you are loading prepunched paper for use with the staple finisher, then make sure the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the right side of the tray.



**Note:** If the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the left side of the tray, then a jam may occur.

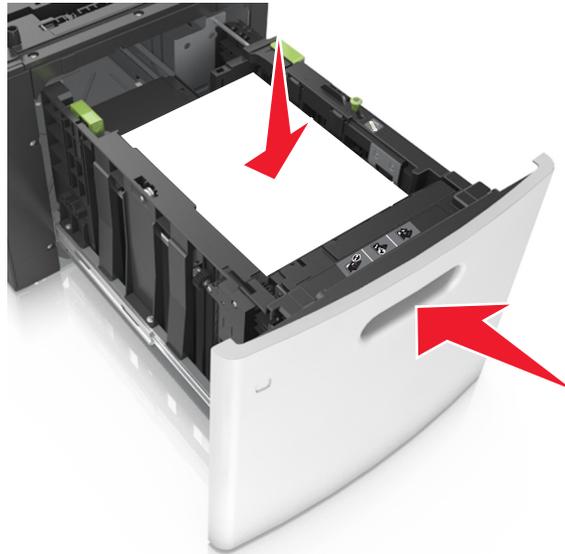
- Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Overfilling the tray can cause paper jams.

**5** Insert the tray.

**Note:** Press the paper stack down while inserting the tray.



**6** From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded.

**Note:** Set the correct paper size and type to avoid paper jams and print quality problems.

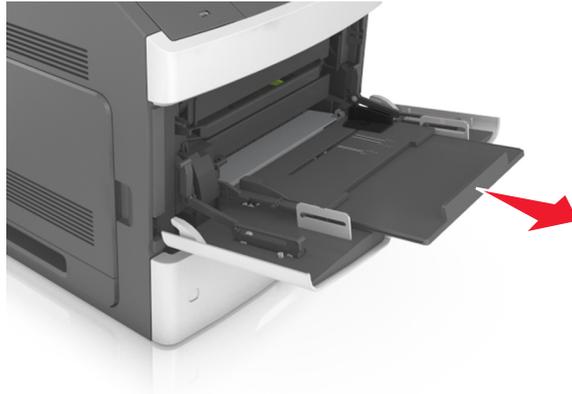
## Loading the multipurpose feeder

**1** Pull down the multipurpose feeder door.

**Note:** Do not load or close the multipurpose feeder while a job is printing.

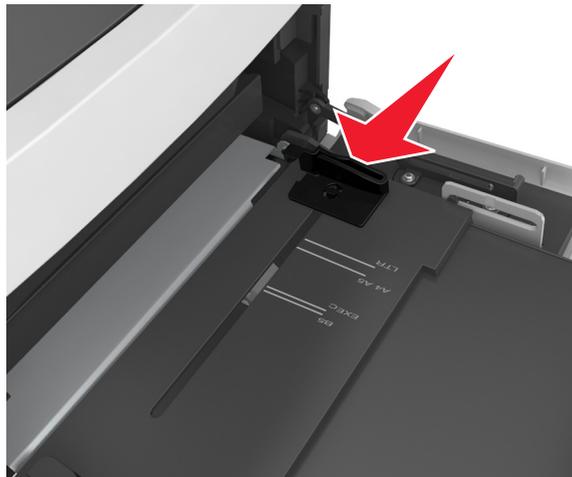


- Using the handle, pull the multipurpose feeder extender.

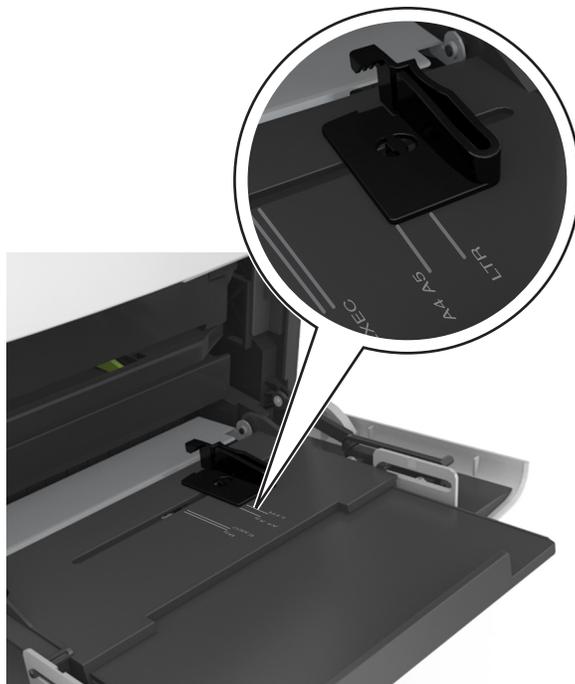


**Note:** Guide the extender gently so that the multipurpose feeder is fully extended and open.

- Slide the width guide to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded.

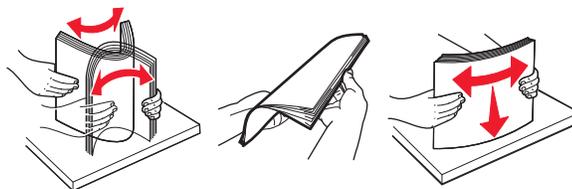


**Note:** Use the paper size indicators on the bottom of tray to help position the guides.

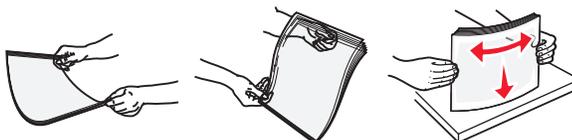


#### 4 Prepare the paper or specialty media for loading.

- Flex sheets of paper back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



- Hold transparencies by the edges, and then fan them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



**Note:** Avoid touching the printable side of the transparencies. Be careful not to scratch them.

- Flex the stack of envelopes back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

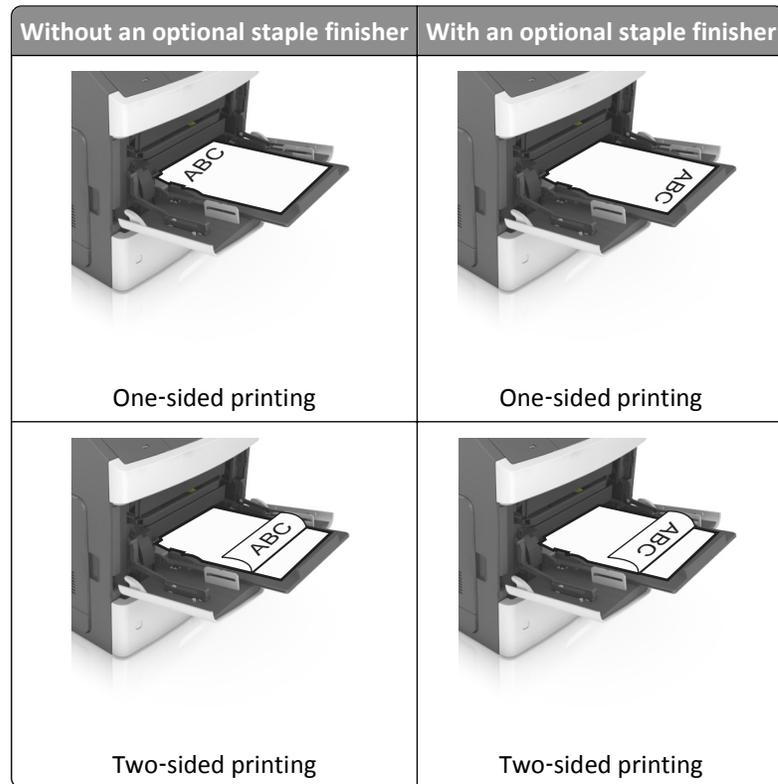


#### 5 Load the paper or specialty media.

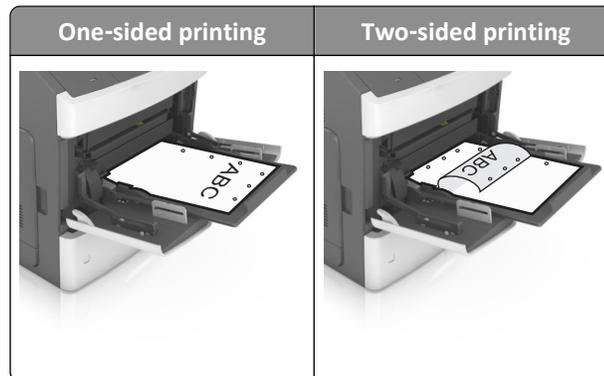
**Note:** Slide the stack gently into the multipurpose feeder until it comes to a stop.

- Load only one size and type of paper or specialty media at a time.
- Make sure the paper fits loosely in the multipurpose feeder, lies flat and is not bent or wrinkled.

- There are different ways of loading letterhead depending on whether an optional staple finisher is installed or not.



- If you are loading prepunched paper for use with the staple finisher, then make sure the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the right side of the tray.



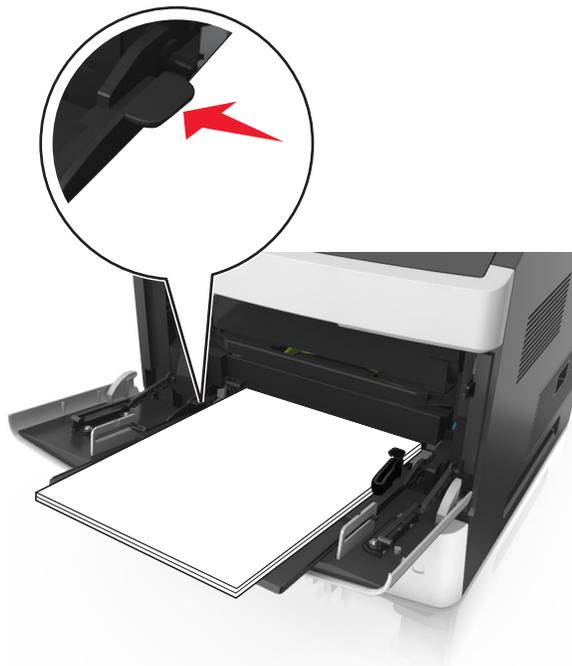
**Note:** If the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the left side of the tray, then a jam may occur.

- Load envelopes with the flap side down and on the left of the multipurpose feeder.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Never use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These envelopes may severely damage the printer.

- Make sure the paper or specialty media is below the maximum paper fill indicator.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Overfilling the feeder can cause paper jams.

- 6 For custom- or Universal-size paper, adjust the width guides to lightly touch the sides of the stack.
- 7 From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.

**Note:** Set the correct paper size and type to avoid paper jams and print quality problems.

## Linking and unlinking trays

### Linking and unlinking trays

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu**.

- 3 Change the paper size and type settings for the trays you are linking.

- To link trays, make sure the paper size and type for the tray match that of the other tray.
- To unlink trays, make sure the paper size or type for the tray *does not* match that of the other tray.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

**Note:** You can also change the paper size and type settings using the printer control panel. For more information, see [“Setting the paper size and type” on page 95](#).

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Paper loaded in the tray should match the paper type name assigned in the printer. The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified paper type. Printing issues may occur if settings are not properly configured.

## Creating a custom name for a paper type

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Names**.

- 3 Select a custom name, and then type a custom paper type name.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

- 5 Click **Custom Types**, and then verify if the new custom paper type name has replaced the custom name.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Paper Menu > Custom Names**

- 2 Select a custom name, and then type a custom paper type name.

3 Touch **Submit**.

4 Touch **Custom Types**, and then verify if the new custom paper type name has replaced the custom name.

## Assigning a custom paper type

### Using the Embedded Web Server

Assign a custom paper type name to a tray when linking or unlinking trays.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Types**.

3 Select a custom paper type name, and then select a paper type.

**Note:** Paper is the factory default paper type for all user-defined custom names.

4 Click **Submit**.

### Using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Paper Menu > Custom Types**

2 Select a custom paper type name, and then select a paper type.

**Note:** Paper is the factory default paper type for all user-defined custom names.

3 Touch **Submit**.

# Printing

## Printing forms and a document

### Printing forms

Use the Forms and Favorites application to quickly and easily access frequently used forms or other information that is regularly printed. Before you can use this application, first set it up on the printer. For more information, see [“Setting up Forms and Favorites” on page 93](#).

1 From the printer home screen, navigate to:

**Forms and Favorites** > select the form from the list > enter the number of copies > adjust other settings

2 Depending on your printer model, touch , , or **Submit**.

## Printing a document

- 1 From the printer control panel, set the paper type and size to match the paper loaded.
- 2 Send the print job:

### For Windows users

- a With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- b Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- c Adjust the settings, if necessary.
- d Click **OK > Print**.

### For Macintosh users

- a Customize the settings in the Page Setup dialog:
  - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Page Setup**.
  - 2 Choose a paper size or create a custom size to match the paper loaded.
  - 3 Click **OK**.
- b Customize the settings in the Print dialog:
  - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.  
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
  - 2 From the print options pop-up menus, adjust the settings, if necessary.

**Note:** To print on a specific paper type, adjust the paper type setting to match the paper loaded, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.

- 3 Click **Print**.

## Adjusting toner darkness

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Toner Darkness**.
- 3 Adjust the toner darkness, and then click **Submit**.

## Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Toner Darkness**

- 2 Adjust the setting, and then touch **Submit**.

## Printing from a flash drive or mobile device

### Printing from a flash drive

#### Notes:

- Before printing an encrypted PDF file, you will be prompted to type the file password from the printer control panel.
- You cannot print files for which you do not have printing permissions.

**1** Insert a flash drive into the USB port.



#### Notes:

- A flash drive icon appears on the printer home screen when a flash drive is inserted.
- If you insert the flash drive when the printer requires attention, such as when a jam has occurred, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then **Busy** appears. After these print jobs are processed, you may need to view the held jobs list to print documents from the flash drive.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the USB cable, any wireless network adapter, any connector, the memory device, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device. Loss of data can occur.



**2** From the printer control panel, touch the document you want to print.

**3** Touch the arrows to specify the number of copies for printing, and then touch **Print**.

**Notes:**

- Do not remove the flash drive from the USB port until the document has finished printing.
- If you leave the flash drive in the printer after leaving the initial USB menu screen, then touch **Held Jobs** on the home screen to print files from the flash drive.

## Printing from a mobile device

To download a compatible mobile printing application, visit [www.lexmark.com/mobile](http://www.lexmark.com/mobile).

**Note:** Mobile printing applications may also be available from your mobile device manufacturer.

## Supported flash drives and file types

**Notes:**

- High-speed USB flash drives must support the full-speed standard. Low-speed USB devices are not supported.
- USB flash drives must support the File Allocation Table (FAT) system. Devices formatted with New Technology File System (NTFS) or any other file system are not supported.

Recommended flash drives	File type
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lexar JumpDrive FireFly (512MB and 1GB)</li> <li>• SanDisk Cruzer Micro (512MB and 1GB)</li> <li>• Sony Micro Vault Classic (512MB and 1GB)</li> </ul>	<p>Documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• .pdf</li> <li>• .xps</li> </ul> <p>Images:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• .dcx</li> <li>• .gif</li> <li>• .jpeg or .jpg</li> <li>• .bmp</li> <li>• .pcx</li> <li>• .tiff or .tif</li> <li>• .png</li> <li>• .fls</li> </ul>

## Printing confidential and other held jobs

### Storing print jobs in the printer

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:



> **Security > Confidential Print** > select the print job type

Use	To
Max Invalid PIN	Limit the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered. <b>Note:</b> When the limit is reached, the print jobs for that user name and PIN are deleted.
Confidential Job Expiration	Hold print jobs in the computer until you enter the PIN from the printer control panel. <b>Note:</b> The PIN is set from the computer. It must be four digits, using the numbers 1–9.
Repeat Job Expiration	Print and store print jobs in the printer memory.
Verify Job Expiration	Print one copy of a print job and hold the remaining copies. It allows you to examine if the first copy is satisfactory. The print job is automatically deleted from the printer memory when all copies are printed.
Reserve Job Expiration	Store print jobs for printing at a later time. <b>Note:</b> The print jobs are held until deleted from the Held Jobs menu.
<p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs.</li> <li>• You can set the printer to store print jobs in the printer memory until you start the print job from the printer control panel.</li> <li>• All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called <i>held jobs</i>.</li> </ul>	

2 Touch **Submit**.

## Printing confidential and other held jobs

**Note:** Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after printing. Repeat and Reserve jobs are *held* in the printer until you delete them.

### For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- 2 Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- 3 Click **Print and Hold**.
- 4 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 5 Click **OK** or **Print**.
- 6 From the printer home screen, release the print job.
  - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > Confidential Jobs > enter the PIN > select the print job > specify the number of copies > Print**
  - For other print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > Print**

### For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.  
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
- 2 From the print options or Copies & Pages pop-up menu, choose **Job Routing**.
- 3 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 4 Click **OK** or **Print**.
- 5 From the printer home screen, release the print job.
  - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > Confidential Jobs > enter the PIN > select the print job > specify the number of copies > Print**
  - For other print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > Print**

## Printing information pages

### Printing a font sample list

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:  
 > **Reports > Print Fonts**
- 2 Touch **PCL Fonts** or **PostScript Fonts**.

## Printing a directory list

A directory list shows the resources stored in a flash memory or in the printer hard disk.

From the home screen, navigate to:



> Reports > Print Directory

## Canceling a print job

### Canceling a print job from the printer control panel

- 1 From the printer control panel, touch **Cancel Job** or press  on the keypad.
- 2 Touch the print job you want to cancel, and then touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

**Note:** If you press  on the keypad, then touch **Resume** to return to the home screen.

### Canceling a print job from the computer

#### For Windows users

- 1 Open the printers folder, and then select your printer.
- 2 From the print queue, select the print job you want to cancel, and then delete it.

#### For Macintosh users

- 1 From System Preferences in the Apple menu, navigate to your printer.
- 2 From the print queue, select the print job you want to cancel, and then delete it.

## Managing your printer

### Finding advanced networking and administrator information

This chapter covers basic administrative support tasks using the Embedded Web Server. For more advanced system support tasks, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software CD* or the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

### Checking the virtual display

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.
- 2 Check the virtual display that appears in the top left corner of the screen.  
The virtual display works as an actual display would work on a printer control panel.

## Configuring supply notifications from the Embedded Web Server

You can determine how you would like to be notified when supplies run nearly low, low, very low, or reach their end-of-life by setting the selectable alerts.

### Notes:

- Selectable alerts can be set on the toner cartridge, imaging unit, and maintenance kit.
- All selectable alerts can be set for nearly low, low, and very low supply conditions. Not all selectable alerts can be set for the end-of-life supply condition. E-mail selectable alert is available for all supply conditions.
- The percentage of estimated remaining supply that prompts the alert can be set on some supplies for some supply conditions.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Print Settings > Supply Notifications**.

- 3 From the drop-down menu for each supply, select one of the following notification options:

Notification	Description
Off	The normal printer behavior for all supplies occurs.
E-mail Only	The printer generates an e-mail when the supply condition is reached. The status of the supply will appear on the menus page and status page.
Warning	The printer displays the warning message and generates an email about the status of the supply. The printer does not stop when the supply condition is reached.
Continuable Stop <sup>1</sup>	The printer stops processing jobs when the supply condition is reached, and the user needs to press a button to continue printing.
Non Continuable Stop <sup>1,2</sup>	The printer stops when the supply condition is reached. The supply must be replaced to continue printing.
<sup>1</sup> The printer generates an e-mail about the status of the supply when supply notification is enabled.	
<sup>2</sup> The printer stops when some supplies become empty to prevent damage.	

- 4 Click **Submit**.

## Modifying confidential print settings

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Settings > Security > Confidential Print Setup**.

**3** Modify the settings:

- Set a maximum number of PIN entry attempts. When a user exceeds that number, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.
- Set an expiration time for confidential print jobs. When a user has not printed the jobs within that time, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.

**4** Click **Submit** to save the modified settings.

## Copying printer settings to other printers

**Note:** This feature is available only in network printers.

**1** Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Copy Printer Settings**.

**3** To change the language, select a language from the drop-down menu, and then click **Click here to submit language**.

**4** Click **Printer Settings**.

**5** Type the IP addresses of the source and target printers.

**Note:** If you want to add or remove target printers, then click **Add Target IP** or **Remove Target IP**.

**6** Click **Copy Printer Settings**.

## Printing a menu settings page

From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Reports > Menu Settings Page**

## Printing a network setup page

If the printer is attached to a network, then print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Reports** > **Network Setup Page**

- 2 Check the first section of the network setup page and confirm that the status is Connected.

If the status is Not Connected, then the LAN drop may not be active, or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Consult your system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.

## Checking the status of parts and supplies

A message appears on the printer display when a replacement supply item is needed or when maintenance is required.

### Checking the status of parts and supplies on the printer control panel

From the home screen, navigate to:

**Status/Supplies** > **View Supplies**

### Checking the status of parts and supplies from the Embedded Web Server

**Note:** Make sure that the computer and printer are connected to the same network.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Device Status** > **More Details**.

## Saving energy

### Using Eco-Mode

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Eco-Mode**.

- 3 Select a setting.

Use	To
Off	<p>Use the factory default settings for all settings associated with Eco-Mode.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Settings that were changed when other modes were selected are reset to the factory default settings.</li> <li>• Off supports the performance specifications of the printer.</li> </ul>
Energy	<p>Reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printer engine motors do not start until a document is ready to print. You may notice a short delay before the first page is printed.</li> <li>• The printer enters Sleep mode after one minute of inactivity.</li> <li>• The printer display is turned off when the printer is in Sleep mode.</li> <li>• Lights on the staple finisher and other optional finishers are turned off when the printer is in Sleep mode.</li> </ul>
Energy/Paper	Use all the settings associated with Energy and Paper modes.
Plain Paper	Enable the automatic two-sided (duplex) printing feature.

**4** Click **Submit**.

## Reducing printer noise

Enable Quiet mode to reduce printer noise.

**1** Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Notes:**

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

**2** Click **Settings > General Settings > Quiet Mode**.

**3** Select a setting.

Use	To
On	Reduce printer noise. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Print jobs process at a reduced speed.</li> <li>• Printer engine motors do not start until a document is ready to print. There is a short delay before the first page is printed.</li> <li>• The alarm control and cartridge alarm sounds are turned off.</li> <li>• The printer will ignore the Advance Start command.</li> </ul>
Off	Use factory default settings. <b>Note:</b> This setting supports the performance specifications of the printer.

4 Click **Submit**.

## Using Hibernate mode

Hibernate is an ultra-low-power operating mode.

### Notes:

- Three days is the default amount of time before the printer enters Hibernate mode.
- Make sure to wake the printer from Hibernate mode before sending a print job. A hard reset or a long press of the Sleep button wakes the printer from Hibernate mode.
- If the printer is in Hibernate mode, then the Embedded Web Server is disabled.

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings** > **General Settings**

2 From the “Press Sleep Button” or “Press and Hold Sleep Button” menu, select **Hibernate**, and then touch **Submit**.

## Restoring factory default settings

If you want to keep a list of the current menu settings for reference, then print a menu settings page before restoring the factory default settings. For more information, see [“Printing a menu settings page” on page 123](#).

If you want a more comprehensive method of restoring the printer factory default settings, then perform the Wipe All Settings option. For more information, see [“Erasing non-volatile memory” on page 128](#).

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Restoring factory defaults returns most printer settings to the original factory default settings. Exceptions include the display language, custom sizes and messages, and network/port menu settings. All downloads stored in the RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in the flash memory or in a printer hard disk are not affected.

From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Factory Defaults** > **Restore Now** > **Submit**

## Securing the memory before moving the printer

### Using the security lock feature

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. When a lock compatible with most laptop computers is attached, the printer is locked. When locked, the controller board shield and the controller board cannot be removed. Attach a security lock to the printer in the location shown.



### Statement of Volatility

Your printer contains various types of memory that can store device and network settings, and user data.

Type of memory	Description
Volatile memory	Your printer uses standard random access memory (RAM) to temporarily buffer user data during simple print jobs.
Non-volatile memory	Your printer may use two forms of non-volatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types are used to store the operating system, device settings, network information, bookmark settings, and embedded solutions.
Hard disk memory	Some printers have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for device-specific functionality. This lets the device retain buffered user data from complex print jobs, as well as form data, and font data.

Erase the content of any installed printer memory in the following circumstances:

- The printer is being decommissioned.
- The printer hard disk is being replaced.
- The printer is being moved to a different department or location.
- The printer is being serviced by someone from outside your organization.

- The printer is being removed from your premises for service.
- The printer is being sold to another organization.

### Disposing of a printer hard disk

**Note:** Some printer models may not have a printer hard disk installed.

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to make sure that confidential data stored in the printer hard disk cannot be accessed when the printer—or its hard disk—is removed from your premises.

- **Degaussing**—Flushes the hard disk with a magnetic field that erases stored data
- **Crushing**—Physically compresses the hard disk to break component parts and render them unreadable
- **Milling**—Physically shreds the hard disk into small metal bits

**Note:** Most data can be erased electronically, but the only way to guarantee that all data is completely erased is to physically destroy each hard disk where data is stored.

### Erasing volatile memory

The volatile memory (RAM) installed in your printer requires a power source to retain information. To erase the buffered data, simply turn off the printer.

### Erasing non-volatile memory

Erase individual settings, device and network settings, security settings, and embedded solutions by following these steps:

- 1** Turn off the printer.
- 2** Hold down **2** and **6** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully turned on, a list of functions appears on the printer display, instead of the standard home screen icons.

- 3** Touch **Wipe All Settings**.

The printer restarts several times during this process.

**Note:** Wipe All Settings securely removes device settings, solutions, jobs, and passwords from the printer memory.

- 4** Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

## Erasing printer hard disk memory

### Notes:

- Some printer models may not have a printer hard disk installed.
- Configuring Erase Temporary Data Files in the printer menus lets you remove residual confidential material left by print jobs by securely overwriting files that have been marked for deletion.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Hold down **2** and **6** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully turned on, the touch screen displays a list of functions.

- 3 Touch **Wipe Disk**, and then touch one of the following:
  - **Wipe disk (fast)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with all zeroes in a single pass.
  - **Wipe disk (secure)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.
- 4 Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping.

### Notes:

- A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task.
- Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

- 5 Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

## Configuring printer hard disk encryption

Enable hard disk encryption to prevent loss of sensitive data in the event the printer or its hard disk is stolen.

**Note:** Some printer models may not have a printer hard disk installed.

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Security > Disk Encryption**.

**Note:** Disk Encryption appears in the Security Menu only when a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.

- 3 From the Disk encryption menu, select **Enable**.

**Notes:**

- Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

**4** Click **Submit**.**Using the printer control panel****1** Turn off the printer.**2** Hold down **2** and **6** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully turned on, a list of functions appears on the printer display.

**3** Touch **Disk Encryption > Enable**.

**Note:** Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.

**4** Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping.**Notes:**

- Do not turn off the printer during the encryption process. Doing so may result in loss of data.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.
- A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task. After the disk has been encrypted, the printer will return to the Enable/Disable screen.

**5** Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

**Finding printer security information**

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to make sure that confidential data stored in the printer cannot be accessed by unauthorized persons. For more information, visit the [Lexmark security Web page](#).

You can also see the *Embedded Web Server — Security: Administrator's Guide* for additional information:

**1** Go to [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com), and then navigate to **Support & Downloads** > select your printer.**2** Click the **Manuals** tab, and then select *Embedded Web Server — Security: Administrator's Guide*.

# Paper and specialty media guide

## Notes:

- Make sure that the paper size, type, and weight are set correctly on the computer or printer control panel.
- Flex, fan, and straighten specialty media before loading them.
- The printer may print at a reduced speed to prevent damage to the fuser.
- For more information on card stock and labels, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

## Using specialty media

### Tips on using card stock

Card stock is heavy, single-ply specialty media. Many of its variable characteristics, such as moisture content, thickness, and texture, can significantly affect print quality.

- From the printer control panel, set the paper size, type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the card stock loaded in the tray.
- Print samples on the card stock being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Specify the paper texture and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
- Preprinting, perforation, and creasing may significantly affect the print quality and cause jams or other paper feed problems.
- Before loading the card stock on the tray, flex and fan the card stock to loosen them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

### Tips on using envelopes

- From the printer control panel, set the paper size, type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the envelopes loaded in the tray.
- Print samples on the envelopes being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Use envelopes designed specifically for laser printers.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 90-g/m<sup>2</sup> (24-lb) paper or 25% cotton.
- Use only new envelopes from undamaged packages.
- To optimize performance and minimize jams, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist.
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way.
  - Have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing.
  - Have metal clasps, string ties, or folding bars.
  - Have an interlocking design.
  - Have postage stamps attached.
  - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position.

- Have bent corners.
- Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes.
- Adjust the width guides to fit the width of the envelopes.
- Before loading the envelopes on the tray, flex the stack of envelopes back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

**Note:** A combination of high humidity (over 60%) and high printing temperature may wrinkle or seal envelopes.

## Tips on using labels

- From the printer control panel, set the paper size, type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the labels loaded in the tray.
- Print samples on labels being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- For more information on label printing, characteristics, and design, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.
- Use labels designed specifically for laser printers.
- Do not use labels with slick backing material.
- Do not use labels with exposed adhesive.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam. Partial sheets also contaminate the printer and the cartridge with adhesive, and could void the printer and toner cartridge warranties.
- Before loading labels on the tray, flex and fan labels to loosen them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

**Note:** Vinyl and polyester labels are supported only in the MS710 Series printer models.

## Tips on using transparencies

- From the printer control panel, set the paper size, type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the transparencies loaded in the tray.
- Print a test page on the transparencies being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Use transparencies designed specifically for laser printers.
- Avoid getting fingerprints on the transparencies to prevent print quality problems.
- Before loading transparencies, flex and fan the sheets to prevent them from sticking together.
- When printing on large volumes of transparencies, make sure to print by batches of only up to 20 with an interval of at least three minutes between batches, to prevent the transparencies from sticking together in the bin. You can also remove transparencies from the bin by batches of 20.

## Paper guidelines

### Paper characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these factors before printing on them:

## Weight

The printer trays and multipurpose feeder can automatically feed paper weights between 60–176 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–47-lb) grain long paper. The 2100-sheet tray can automatically feed paper weights up to 60–135 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–36-lb) grain long paper. Paper lighter than 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb) might not be stiff enough to feed properly, and may cause jams.

**Note:** Two-sided printing is supported for 60–176 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–47-lb) paper.

## Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions, even in the trays, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and can cause feeding problems.

## Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. Always use paper between 100 and 300 Sheffield points; smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

## Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until it is time to use it. This limits the exposure of paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Store paper in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

## Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, running the length of the paper, or *grain short*, running the width of the paper.

For 60–176 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–47-lb) paper, grain long paper is recommended.

## Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability, resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

## Selecting paper

Using the appropriate paper prevents jams and helps ensure trouble-free printing.

To help avoid paper jams and poor print quality:

- *Always* use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended printable side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- *Do not* use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.

- *Do not* mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same tray; mixing results in jams.
- *Do not* use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

## Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

- Use grain long for 60–90-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–24-lb) paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not.
- Print samples on preprinted forms and letterheads considered for use before buying large quantities. This determines whether or not the ink in the preprinted form or letterhead will affect print quality.
- When in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

## Using recycled paper and other office papers

As an environmentally conscientious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled paper produced specifically for use in laser (electrophotographic) printers.

While no blanket statement can be made that all recycled paper will feed well, Lexmark consistently tests papers that represent recycled cut size copier papers available on the global market. This scientific testing is conducted with rigor and discipline. Many factors are taken into consideration both separately and as a whole, including the following:

- Amount of post-consumer waste (Lexmark tests up to 100% post-consumer waste content.)
- Temperature and humidity conditions (Testing chambers simulate climates from all over the world.)
- Moisture content (Business papers should have low moisture: 4–5%.)
- Bending resistance and proper stiffness means optimum feeding through the printer.
- Thickness (impacts how much can be loaded into a tray)
- Surface roughness (measured in Sheffield units, impacts print clarity and how well toner fuses to the paper)
- Surface friction (determines how easily sheets can be separated)
- Grain and formation (impacts curling, which also influences the mechanics of how the paper behaves as it moves through the printer)
- Brightness and texture (look and feel)

Recycled papers are better than ever; however, the amount of recycled content in a paper affects the degree of control over foreign matter. And while recycled papers are one good path to printing in an environmentally responsible manner, they are not perfect. The energy required to de-ink and deal with additives such as colorants and “glue” often generates more carbon emissions than does normal paper production. However, using recycled papers enables better resource management overall.

Lexmark concerns itself with the responsible use of paper in general based on life cycle assessments of its products. To gain a better understanding of the impact of printers on the environment, the company commissioned a number of life cycle assessments and found that paper was identified as the primary contributor (up to 80%) of carbon emissions caused throughout the entire life of a device (from design to end-of-life). This is due to the energy-intensive manufacturing processes required to make paper.

Thus, Lexmark seeks to educate customers and partners on minimizing the impact of paper. Using recycled paper is one way. Eliminating excessive and unnecessary paper consumption is another. Lexmark is well-equipped to help

customers minimize printing and copying waste. In addition, the company encourages purchasing paper from suppliers who demonstrate their commitment to sustainable forestry practices.

Lexmark does not endorse specific suppliers, although a converter's product list for special applications is maintained. However, the following paper choice guidelines will help alleviate the environmental impact of printing:

- 1 Minimize paper consumption.
- 2 Be selective about the origin of wood fiber. Buy from suppliers who carry certifications such as the Forestry Stewardship Council (FSC) or The Program for the Endorsement of Forest Certification (PEFC). These certifications guarantee that the paper manufacturer uses wood pulp from forestry operators that employ environmentally and socially responsible forest management and restoration practices.
- 3 Choose the most appropriate paper for printing needs: normal 75 or 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> certified paper, lower weight paper, or recycled paper.

### Unacceptable paper examples

Test results indicate that the following paper types are at risk for use with laser printers:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as *carbonless papers*
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise location on the page) greater than  $\pm 2.3$  mm ( $\pm 0.9$  in.), such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms. In some cases, registration can be adjusted with a software application to successfully print on these forms.)
- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers or curled papers
- Recycled papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European testing)
- Paper weighing less than 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb)
- Multiple part forms or documents

For more information about Lexmark, visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com). General sustainability-related information can be found at the **Environmental Sustainability** link.

### Storing paper

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40 percent. Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18–24°C (65–75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60 percent.
- Store paper in cartons, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.
- Take paper out of the carton or wrapper only when you are ready to load it in the printer. The carton and wrapper help keep the paper clean, dry, and flat.

## Supported paper sizes, types, and weights

The following tables provide information on standard and optional paper sources and the sizes, types, and weights of paper they support.

**Note:** For an unlisted paper size, select the closest *larger* listed size.

### Paper types and weights supported by the printer

The printer engine supports 60–176-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–47-lb) paper weights.

Paper type	250- or 550-sheet trays	2100-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplex
Paper	✓	✓	✓	✓
Card stock	✓	X	✓	✓
Plain Envelope	✓	X	✓	X
Rough Envelope	✓	X	✓	X
Paper labels	✓	X	✓	X
Pharmacy labels	✓	X	✓	✓
Transparencies*	✓	X	✓	X

\* Print on transparencies by batches of only up to 20 to prevent them from sticking together. For more information, see [“Tips on using transparencies” on page 132](#).

### Paper sizes supported by the printer

**Note:** When printing on paper less than 210 mm (8.3 inches) wide, the printer may print at a reduced speed after a period of time to ensure the best print performance.

Paper size <sup>1</sup>	Dimensions	Standard or optional 250- or 550-sheet tray	Optional 2100-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplex
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in.)	✓	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓	✓
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.1 x 5.8 in.)	✓	X	✓	✓

<sup>1</sup> If your preferred default paper size cannot be set in the printer control panel, then you may select common paper sizes that correspond to the position of the length guide in the tray from the Paper Size/Type menu. If the paper size is not available, then select **Universal** or turn off tray size sensing. For more information, contact customer support.

<sup>2</sup> Paper is supported in long-edge orientation.

<sup>3</sup> Universal is supported in duplex mode only if the width is from 105 mm (4.13 in.) to 216 mm (8.5 in.), and the length is from 148 mm (5.83 in.) to 356 mm (14 in.).

Paper size <sup>1</sup>	Dimensions	Standard or optional 250- or 550-sheet tray	Optional 2100-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplex
<b>JIS B5</b>	182 x 257 mm (7.2 x 10.1 in.)	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>Letter</b>	216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Legal</b>	216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Executive</b>	184 x 267 mm (7.3 x 10.5 in.)	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>Oficio</b>	216 x 340 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Folio</b>	216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Statement</b>	140 x 216 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>Universal<sup>3</sup></b>	105 x 148 mm to 216 x 356 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	X	✓	✓
	70 x 127 mm to 216 x 356 mm (2.76 x 5 to 8.5 x 14 in.)	X	X	✓	X
<b>7 3/4 Envelope (Monarch)</b>	98 x 191 mm (3.9 x 7.5 in.)	✓	X	✓	X
<b>9 Envelope</b>	98 x 225 mm (3.9 x 8.9 in.)	✓	X	✓	X
<b>10 Envelope</b>	105 x 241 mm (4.1 x 9.5 in.)	✓	X	✓	X
<b>DL Envelope</b>	110 x 220 mm (4.3 x 8.7 in.)	✓	X	✓	X
<b>C5 Envelope</b>	162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.01 in.)	✓	X	✓	X
<b>B5 Envelope</b>	176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)	✓	X	✓	X

<sup>1</sup> If your preferred default paper size cannot be set in the printer control panel, then you may select common paper sizes that correspond to the position of the length guide in the tray from the Paper Size/Type menu. If the paper size is not available, then select **Universal** or turn off tray size sensing. For more information, contact customer support.

<sup>2</sup> Paper is supported in long-edge orientation.

<sup>3</sup> Universal is supported in duplex mode only if the width is from 105 mm (4.13 in.) to 216 mm (8.5 in.), and the length is from 148 mm (5.83 in.) to 356 mm (14 in.).

Paper size <sup>1</sup>	Dimensions	Standard or optional 250- or 550-sheet tray	Optional 2100-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplex
<b>Other Envelope</b>	98 x 162 mm (3.9 x 6.4 in.) to 176 x 250 mm (6.9 x 9.8 in.)	✓	X	✓	X

<sup>1</sup> If your preferred default paper size cannot be set in the printer control panel, then you may select common paper sizes that correspond to the position of the length guide in the tray from the Paper Size/Type menu. If the paper size is not available, then select **Universal** or turn off tray size sensing. For more information, contact customer support.

<sup>2</sup> Paper is supported in long-edge orientation.

<sup>3</sup> Universal is supported in duplex mode only if the width is from 105 mm (4.13 in.) to 216 mm (8.5 in.), and the length is from 148 mm (5.83 in.) to 356 mm (14 in.).

## Paper sizes, types, and weights supported by the output options

### Supported paper sizes

Paper size	4-bin mailbox	Output expander and high-capacity output expander	Staple finisher	Staple, hole punch finisher
<b>A6</b>	✓	✓	X	X
<b>A5</b>	✓	✓	✓ <sup>1</sup>	✓ <sup>1,3</sup>
<b>JIS B5</b>	✓	✓	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>
<b>Executive</b>	✓	✓	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>
<b>Letter</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>A4</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Legal</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓ <sup>3</sup>
<b>Folio</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Oficio</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Statement</b>	✓	✓	✓ <sup>2</sup>	✓ <sup>2</sup>
<b>Universal</b>	✓	✓	✓ <sup>4</sup>	✓ <sup>3,4</sup>
<b>Envelopes</b>	X	✓	X	X

<sup>1</sup> The finisher staples the paper if it is loaded long edge first.

<sup>2</sup> The finisher stacks the paper but does not staple or punch holes in it.

<sup>3</sup> The finisher stacks and staples the paper but does not punch holes in it.

<sup>4</sup> The finisher staples the paper if its width is from 210 mm (8.27 in.) to 217 mm (8.54 in.).

**Supported paper types and weights**

Paper type	Paper weight	4-bin mailbox	Output expander and high-capacity output expander	Staple finisher	Staple, hole punch finisher
<b>Plain Paper</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	X	✓	X	X
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Card Stock</b>	163 g/m <sup>2</sup> (90 lb index)	X	✓	✓ <sup>1</sup>	✓ <sup>1</sup>
	199 g/m <sup>2</sup> (110 lb index)	X	✓	X	X
<b>Transparency<sup>2</sup></b>	146 g/m <sup>2</sup> (39 lb bond)	X	✓	✓ <sup>1</sup>	✓ <sup>1</sup>
<b>Recycled</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	X	✓	X	X
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Paper labels</b>	180 g/m <sup>2</sup> (48 lb bond)	X	✓	X	X
<b>Dual web and Integrated</b>	180 g/m <sup>2</sup> (48 lb bond)	X	✓	X	X
<b>Bond</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	X	✓	X	X
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Envelope</b>	105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (28 lb bond)	X	✓	X	X
<b>Rough Envelope</b>	105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (28 lb bond)	X	✓	X	X
<b>Letterhead</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	X	✓	X	X
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓

<sup>1</sup> The finisher stacks the paper but does not staple or punch holes in it.

<sup>2</sup> Print on transparencies by batches of only up to 20 to prevent them from sticking together. For more information, see [“Tips on using transparencies” on page 132](#).

Paper type	Paper weight	4-bin mailbox	Output expander and high-capacity output expander	Staple finisher	Staple, hole punch finisher
<b>Preprinted</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	x	✓	x	x
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Colored Paper</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	x	✓	x	x
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Light paper</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	x	✓	x	x
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Heavy paper</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	x	✓	x	x
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Rough/cotton</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	x	✓	x	x
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Custom type [x]</b>	90–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–47 lb bond)	x	✓	x	x
	60–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16–24 lb bond)	✓	✓	✓	✓

<sup>1</sup> The finisher stacks the paper but does not staple or punch holes in it.

<sup>2</sup> Print on transparencies by batches of only up to 20 to prevent them from sticking together. For more information, see [“Tips on using transparencies” on page 132.](#)

# Understanding the printer menus

## Menus list

### Paper Menu

Default Source  
 Paper Size/Type  
 Configure MP  
 Substitute Size  
 Paper Texture  
 Paper Weight  
 Paper Loading  
 Custom Types  
 Custom Names <sup>3</sup>  
 Custom Bin Names <sup>3</sup>  
 Universal Setup  
 Bin Setup

### Security

Edit Security Setups <sup>4</sup>  
 Miscellaneous Security Settings <sup>3</sup>  
 Confidential Print  
 Erase Temporary Data Files  
 Security Audit Log  
 Set Date and Time

### Reports

Menu Settings Page  
 Device Statistics  
 Stapler Test  
 Network Setup Page <sup>1</sup>  
 Profiles List  
 Print Fonts  
 Print Directory  
 Asset Report

### Settings

General Settings  
 Flash Drive Menu  
 Print Settings

### Network/Ports

Active NIC  
 Standard Network <sup>2</sup>  
 Standard USB  
 Parallel [x]  
 Serial [x]  
 SMTP Setup

### Help

Print All Guides  
 Print Quality  
 Printing Guide  
 Print Defects Guide  
 Information Guide  
 Supplies Guide

<sup>1</sup> Depending on the printer setup, this menu item appears as Network Setup Page or Network [x] Setup Page.

<sup>2</sup> Depending on the printer setup, this menu item appears as Standard Network or Network [x].

<sup>3</sup> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.

<sup>4</sup> This menu appears only in select touch-screen printer models.

## Paper menu

### Default Source menu

Use	To
<b>Default Source</b> Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder <sup>1</sup> MP Feeder <sup>2</sup> Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Set a default paper source for all print jobs.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure MP to "Cassette" for Multipurpose Feeder or MP Feeder to appear as a menu setting.</li> <li>• If two trays contain paper of the same size and type, and the trays have the same settings, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.</li> </ul>
<sup>1</sup> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models. <sup>2</sup> This menu appears only in non-touch-screen printer models.	

### Paper Size/Type menu

Use	To
<b>Tray [x] Size</b> A4 A5 A6 JIS-B5 Letter Legal Executive Oficio (Mexico) Folio Statement Universal 7 3/4 Envelope 9 Envelope 10 Envelope DL Envelope C5 Envelope B5 Envelope Other Envelope	Specify the paper size loaded in each tray.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• If two trays contain paper of the same size and type, and the trays have the same settings, then the trays are automatically linked. The multipurpose feeder may also be linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.</li> <li>• The A6 paper size is supported only in Tray 1 and in the multipurpose feeder.</li> </ul>
<b>Note:</b> Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.	

Use	To
<p><b>Tray [x] Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plain Paper</li> <li>Card Stock</li> <li>Transparency</li> <li>Recycled</li> <li>Labels</li> <li>Bond</li> <li>Envelope</li> <li>Rough Envelope</li> <li>Letterhead</li> <li>Preprinted</li> <li>Colored Paper</li> <li>Light Paper</li> <li>Heavy Paper</li> <li>Rough/Cotton</li> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the paper type loaded in each tray.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plain Paper is the factory default setting for Tray 1. Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting for all other trays.</li> <li>• If available, a user-defined name will appear instead of Custom Type [x].</li> <li>• Use this menu to configure automatic tray linking.</li> </ul>
<p><b>MP Feeder Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4</li> <li>A5</li> <li>A6</li> <li>JIS B5</li> <li>Letter</li> <li>Legal</li> <li>Executive</li> <li>Oficio (Mexico)</li> <li>Folio</li> <li>Statement</li> <li>Universal</li> <li>7 3/4 Envelope</li> <li>9 Envelope</li> <li>10 Envelope</li> <li>DL Envelope</li> <li>C5 Envelope</li> <li>B5 Envelope</li> <li>Other Envelope</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the paper size loaded in the multipurpose feeder.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure MP to “Cassette” for MP Feeder Size to appear as a menu.</li> <li>• The multipurpose feeder does not automatically detect paper size. Make sure to set the paper size value.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Note:</b> Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.</p>	

Use	To
<p><b>MP Feeder Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plain Paper</li> <li>Card Stock</li> <li>Transparency</li> <li>Recycled</li> <li>Labels</li> <li>Bond</li> <li>Envelope</li> <li>Rough Envelope</li> <li>Letterhead</li> <li>Preprinted</li> <li>Colored Paper</li> <li>Light Paper</li> <li>Heavy Paper</li> <li>Rough/Cotton</li> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the paper type loaded in the multipurpose feeder.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plain Paper is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure to “Cassette” for MP Feeder Type to appear as a menu.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Manual Paper Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4</li> <li>A5</li> <li>A6</li> <li>JIS B5</li> <li>Letter</li> <li>Legal</li> <li>Executive</li> <li>Oficio (Mexico)</li> <li>Folio</li> <li>Statement</li> <li>Universal</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the paper size being manually loaded.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Manual Paper Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plain Paper</li> <li>Card Stock</li> <li>Transparency</li> <li>Recycled</li> <li>Labels</li> <li>Bond</li> <li>Letterhead</li> <li>Preprinted</li> <li>Colored Paper</li> <li>Light Paper</li> <li>Heavy Paper</li> <li>Rough/Cotton</li> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the paper type being manually loaded.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plain Paper is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure MP to “Manual” for Manual Paper Type to appear as a menu.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Note:</b> Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.</p>	

Use	To
<b>Manual Envelope Size</b> 7 3/4 Envelope 9 Envelope 10 Envelope DL Envelope C5 Envelope B5 Envelope Other Envelope	Specify the envelope size being manually loaded.  <b>Note:</b> 10 Envelope is the U.S. factory default setting. DL Envelope is the international factory default setting.
<b>Manual Envelope Type</b> Envelope Rough Envelope Custom Type [x]	Specify the envelope type being manually loaded.  <b>Note:</b> Envelope is the factory default setting.
<b>Note:</b> Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.	

## Configure MP menu

Use	To
<b>Configure MP</b> Cassette Manual First	Determine when the printer selects paper from the multipurpose feeder.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cassette is the factory default setting. Cassette configures the multipurpose feeder as the automatic paper source.</li> <li>• Manual sets the multipurpose feeder only for manual-feed print jobs.</li> <li>• First configures the multipurpose feeder as the primary paper source.</li> </ul>

## Substitute Size menu

Use	To
<b>Substitute Size</b> Off Statement/A5 Letter/A4 All Listed	Substitute a specified paper size if the requested paper size is not available.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Listed is the factory default setting. All available substitutions are allowed.</li> <li>• Off indicates that no size substitutions are allowed.</li> <li>• Setting a size substitution lets the print job continue without <b>Change Paper</b> appearing.</li> </ul>

## Paper Texture menu

Use	To
<b>Plain Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the plain paper loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Card Stock Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the card stock loaded in a specific tray. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• These options appear only if card stock is supported.</li> </ul>
<b>Transparency Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the transparencies loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Recycled Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the recycled paper loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Labels Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the labels loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Vinyl Labels Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the vinyl labels loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Bond Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the bond paper loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Rough is the factory default setting.
<b>Envelope Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the envelopes loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough Envelope Texture</b> Rough	Specify the relative texture of the rough envelopes loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Rough is the factory default setting.
<b>Letterhead Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the letterhead loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Preprinted Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the preprinted paper loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Colored Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the colored paper loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Light Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the light paper loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Heavy Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the heavy paper loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough/Cotton Texture</b> Rough	Specify the relative texture of the rough or cotton paper loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Rough is the factory default setting.
<b>Custom [x] Texture</b> Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the custom paper loaded in a specific tray. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.

## Paper Weight menu

Use	To
<b>Plain Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the plain paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Card Stock Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the card stock loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Transparency Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the transparencies loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Recycled Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the recycled paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Labels Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the labels loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Vinyl Labels Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the vinyl labels loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Bond Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the bond paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Envelope Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the envelope loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough Envelope Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the rough envelope loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Letterhead Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the letterhead loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Preprinted Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the preprinted paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Colored Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the colored paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Light Weight</b> Light	Specify that the weight of the paper loaded is light.
<b>Heavy Weight</b> Heavy	Specify that the weight of the paper loaded is heavy.
<b>Rough/Cotton Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the cotton or rough paper loaded. <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Custom [x] Weight</b> Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the custom paper loaded.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The options appear only when the custom type is supported.</li> </ul>

## Paper Loading menu

Use	To
<b>Card Stock Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Card Stock as the paper type.
<b>Recycled Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Recycled as the paper type.
<b>Labels Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Labels as the paper type.
<b>Vinyl Labels Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Vinyl Labels as the paper type.
<b>Bond Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Bond as the paper type.
<b>Letterhead Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Letterhead as the paper type.
<b>Preprinted Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Preprinted as the paper type.
<b>Colored Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Colored as the paper type.
<b>Light Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Light as the paper type.
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for all Paper Loading menu selections.</li> <li>• Duplex sets the printer default to two-sided printing for every print job unless one-sided printing is selected from Print Properties or the print dialog, depending on your operating system.</li> </ul>	

Use	To
<b>Heavy Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Heavy as the paper type.
<b>Rough/Cotton Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Rough or Cotton as the paper type.
<b>Custom [x] Loading</b> Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs with Custom [x] as the paper type.  <b>Note:</b> Custom [x] Loading is available only when the custom type is supported.
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for all Paper Loading menu selections.</li> <li>• Duplex sets the printer default to two-sided printing for every print job unless one-sided printing is selected from Print Properties or the print dialog, depending on your operating system.</li> </ul>	

## Custom Types menu

Use	To
<b>Custom Type [x]</b> Paper Card Stock Transparency Rough/Cotton Labels Envelope	Associate a paper or specialty media type with a Custom Type [x] name.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper is the factory default setting for Custom Type [x].</li> <li>• The specialty media type must be supported in the selected tray or feeder in order to print from that source.</li> </ul>
<b>Recycled</b> Paper Card Stock Transparency Rough/Cotton Labels Envelope Cotton	Specify a paper type when the Recycled setting is selected in other menus.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The Recycled paper type must be supported in the selected tray or feeder in order to print from that source.</li> </ul>

## Custom Names menu

Use	To
<b>Custom Name [x]</b>	Specify a custom name for a paper type. This name replaces Custom Type [x] in the printer menus.

## Custom Bin Names menu

Use	To
<b>Standard Bin</b>	Specify a custom name for the standard bin.
<b>Bin [x]</b>	Specify a custom name for Bin [x].

## Universal Setup menu

Use	To
<b>Units of Measure</b> Inches Millimeters	Identify the units of measure.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inches is the U.S. factory default setting.</li> <li>• Millimeters is the international factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Portrait Width</b> 3–14.17 inches 76–360 mm	Set the portrait width.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the width exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum width allowed.</li> <li>• 8.5 inches is the U.S. factory default setting. You can increase the width in 0.01-inch increments.</li> <li>• 216 mm is the international factory default setting. You can increase the width in 1-mm increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Portrait Height</b> 3–14.17 inches 76–360 mm	Set the portrait height.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the height exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum height allowed.</li> <li>• 14 inches is the U.S. factory default setting. You can increase the height in 0.01-inch increments.</li> <li>• 356 mm is the international factory default setting. You can increase the height in 1-mm increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Feed Direction</b> Short Edge Long Edge	Specify the feed direction if the paper can be loaded in either direction.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Short Edge is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Long Edge appears only when the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported in the tray.</li> </ul>

## Bin Setup menu

Use	To
<b>Output Bin</b> Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specify the default bin.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If multiple bins are assigned the same name, then the name appears only once in the menu.</li> <li>• Standard Bin is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Configure Bins</b> Mailbox Link Mail Overflow Link Optional Type Assignment	Specify configuration options for bins.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mailbox is the factory default setting. This setting treats each bin as a separate mailbox.</li> <li>• Link configures all available bins as one large bin.</li> <li>• Mail Overflow configures each bin as a separate mailbox.</li> <li>• Link Optional links all available bins except the standard bin and only appears when at least two optional bins are installed.</li> <li>• Type Assignment assigns each paper type to a bin or linked bin set.</li> <li>• Bins assigned the same name are automatically linked unless Link Optional is selected.</li> </ul>
<b>Overflow Bin</b> Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specify an alternative bin when a designated bin is full.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Standard Bin is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• If multiple bins are assigned the same name, then the name only appears once in the bin list.</li> <li>• [x] can be any number between 1 and 12 if the appropriate optional bins are installed.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Assign Type/Bin</b> Plain Paper Bin Card Stock Bin Transparency Bin Recycled Bin Labels Bin Vinyl Labels Bin Bond Bin Envelope Bin Rough Envelope Bin Letterhead Bin Preprinted Bin Colored Bin Light Paper Bin Heavy Paper Bin Rough/Cotton Bin Custom [x] Bin	Select a bin for each supported paper type. For each type, select the following options: Disabled Standard Bin Bin [x] <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disabled is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• [x] can be any number between 1 and 12 if the appropriate optional bins are installed.</li> <li>• If multiple bins are assigned the same name, then the name only appears once in the bin list.</li> </ul>

## Reports menu

### Reports menu

Use	To
<b>Menu Settings Page</b>	Print a report containing information about the paper loaded in trays, installed memory, total page count, alarms, timeouts, printer control panel language, TCP/IP address, status of supplies, status of the network connection, and other information.
<b>Device Statistics</b>	Print a report containing printer statistics such as supply information and details about printed pages.
<b>Stapler Test</b>	Print a report that confirms that the staple finisher is functioning properly. <b>Note:</b> This menu appears only if an optional staple finisher is installed.
<b>Network Setup Page</b>	Print a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information. <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only in network printers or in printers connected to print servers.
<b>Network [x] Setup Page</b>	Print a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item is available only when more than one network option is installed.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only in network printers or in printers connected to print servers.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Profiles List</b>	Print a list of profiles stored in the printer. <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when LDSS is enabled.
<b>Print Fonts</b> PCL Fonts PostScript Fonts	Print a report of all the fonts available for the printer language currently set in the printer. <b>Note:</b> A separate list is available for PCL and PostScript emulations.
<b>Print Directory</b>	Print a list of all the resources stored in an optional flash memory card or printer hard disk. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Job Buffer Size must be set to 100%.</li> <li>• Make sure the optional flash memory or printer hard disk is installed correctly and working properly.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when an optional flash drive or printer hard disk is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Asset Report</b>	Print a report containing printer asset information, such as serial number and model name.

## Network/Ports menu

### Active NIC menu

Use	To
<b>Active NIC</b> Auto [list of available network cards]	Allow the printer to connect to a network. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only if an optional network adapter is installed.</li> </ul>

### Standard Network or Network [x] menu

**Note:** Only active ports appear in this menu.

Use	To
<b>Energy Efficient Ethernet</b> Enable Disable	Reduce power consumption when the printer receives no data from the Ethernet network. <b>Note:</b> Enable is the factory default setting.
<b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• If PCL SmartSwitch is disabled, then the printer does not examine incoming data and it uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>PS SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• If PS SmartSwitch is disabled, then the printer does not examine incoming data and it uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.</li> </ul>
<b>NPA Mode</b> Off Auto	Set the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The printer automatically restarts when the setting is changed from the control panel.</li> </ul>
<b>Network Buffer</b> Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed]	Set the size of the network input buffer.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>• To increase the maximum size range for the Network Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and USB buffers.</li> <li>• The printer automatically restarts when the setting is changed from the control panel.</li> </ul>
<b>Job Buffering</b> Off On Auto	Temporarily store print jobs in the printer hard disk before printing. This menu only appears when a formatted disk is installed.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The printer automatically restarts when the setting is changed from the control panel. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Mac Binary PS</b> On Off Auto	Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs.  <b>Note:</b> Auto is the factory default setting.
<b>Standard Network Setup OR Network [x] Setup</b> Reports Network Card TCP/IP IPv6 Wireless AppleTalk	Show and set the printer network settings.  <b>Note:</b> The Wireless menu appears only when the printer is connected to a wireless network.

## Reports menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > Reports**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Reports**

Use	To
<b>Print Setup Page</b>	Print a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address.

## Network Card menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > Network Card**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Network Card**

Use	To
<b>View Card Status</b> Connected Disconnected	View the connection status of the wireless network adapter.
<b>View Card Speed</b>	View the speed of an active wireless network adapter.
<b>Network Address</b> UAA LAA	View the network addresses.
<b>Job Timeout</b> 0, 10–225 seconds	Set the amount of time it takes for a network print job to be canceled. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “90 seconds” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• A setting value of 0 disables the timeout.</li> <li>• If a value between 1 and 9 is selected, then <b>Invalid</b> appears on the display, and the value is not saved.</li> </ul>
<b>Banner Page</b> Off On	Allow the printer to print a banner page. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

## TCP/IP menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > TCP/IP**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > TCP/IP**

**Note:** This menu is available only in network printers or printers attached to print servers.

Use	To
<b>Set Hostname</b>	Set the current TCP/IP host name. <b>Note:</b> This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.

Use	To
<b>IP Address</b>	View or change the current TCP/IP address. <b>Note:</b> Manually setting the IP address sets the Enable DHCP and Enable Auto IP settings to Off. It also sets Enable BOOTP and Enable RARP to Off on systems that support BOOTP and RARP.
<b>Netmask</b>	View or change the current TCP/IP netmask.
<b>Gateway</b>	View or change the current TCP/IP gateway.
<b>Enable DHCP</b> On Off	Specify the DHCP address and parameter assignment. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable RARP</b> On Off	Specify the RARP address assignment setting. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable BOOTP</b> On Off	Specify the BOOTP address assignment setting. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable AutoIP</b> Yes No	Specify the Zero Configuration Networking setting. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable FTP/TFTP</b> Yes No	Enable the built-in FTP server, which lets you send files to the printer using File Transfer Protocol. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable HTTP Server</b> Yes No	Enable the built-in Web server (Embedded Web Server). When enabled, the printer can be monitored and managed remotely using a Web browser. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>WINS Server Address</b>	View or change the current WINS server address.
<b>Enable DDNS</b> Yes No	View or change the current DDNS setting. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable mDNS</b> Yes No	View or change the current mDNS setting. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>DNS Server Address</b>	View or change the current DNS server address.
<b>Backup DNS Server Address</b>	View or change the backup DNS server addresses.
<b>Backup DNS Server Address 2</b>	
<b>Backup DNS Server Address 3</b>	
<b>Enable HTTPS</b> Yes No	View or change the current HTTPS setting. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.

## IPv6 menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > IPv6**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > IPv6**

**Note:** This menu is available only in network printers or printers that are attached to print servers.

Use	To
<b>Enable IPv6</b> On Off	Enable IPv6 in the printer. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Auto Configuration</b> On Off	Specify whether or not the wireless network adapter accepts the automatic IPv6 address configuration entries provided by a router. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>View Hostname</b>	Set the host name.
<b>View Address</b>	<b>Note:</b> These settings can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>View Router Address</b>	
<b>Enable DHCPv6</b> On Off	Enable DHCPv6 in the printer. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

## Wireless menu

**Note:** This menu is available only in printers connected to a wireless network or printer models that have a wireless network adapter.

To access the menu, navigate to:

**Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Wireless**

Use	To
<b>Wi-Fi Protected Setup</b> Start Push Button Method Start PIN Method	Establish a wireless network and enable network security. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start Push Button Method connects the printer to a wireless network when buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) are pressed within a given period of time.</li> <li>• Start PIN Method connects the printer to a wireless network when a PIN on the printer is entered into the wireless settings of the access point.</li> </ul>
<b>Enable/Disable WPS Auto-detection</b> Enable Disable	Automatically detect the connection method that an access point with WPS uses—Start Push Button Method or Start PIN Method. <b>Note:</b> Disable is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Network Mode</b> BSS Type Infrastructure Ad hoc	Specify the network mode.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Infrastructure is the factory default setting. This lets the printer access a network using an access point.</li> <li>• Ad hoc configures wireless connection directly between the printer and a computer.</li> </ul>
<b>Compatibility</b> 802.11b/g 802.11b/g/n	Specify the wireless standard for the wireless network. <b>Note:</b> 802.11b/g/n is the factory default setting.
<b>Choose Network</b>	Select an available network for the printer to use.
<b>View Signal Quality</b>	View the quality of the wireless connection.
<b>View Security Mode</b>	View the encryption method for the wireless network.

## AppleTalk menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > AppleTalk**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > AppleTalk**

Use	To
<b>Activate</b> Yes No	Enable or disable AppleTalk support. <b>Note:</b> No is the factory default setting.
<b>View Name</b>	Show the assigned AppleTalk name. <b>Note:</b> The AppleTalk name can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>View Address</b>	Show the assigned AppleTalk address. <b>Note:</b> The AppleTalk address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>Set Zone</b> [list of zones available on the network]	Provide a list of AppleTalk zones available on the network. <b>Note:</b> The default zone for the network is the factory default setting.

## Standard USB menu

Use	To
<b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if the PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>PS SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>NPA Mode</b> On Off Auto	Set the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then process it appropriately.</li> <li>• The printer automatically restarts when changing the setting from the printer control panel. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>USB Buffer</b> Disabled Auto 3K to [maximum size allowed]	Set the size of the USB input buffer.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes.</li> <li>• The USB buffer size value can be changed in 1-K increments.</li> <li>• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>• To increase the maximum size range for the USB Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers.</li> <li>• The printer automatically restarts when the setting is changed from the printer control panel. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Job Buffering</b> Off On Auto	Temporarily store print jobs in the printer hard disk before printing. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• On buffers jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>• Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Mac Binary PS</b> On Off Auto	Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.</li> <li>• Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> </ul>
<b>ENA Address</b> YYY.YYY.YYY.YYY	Set the network address information for an external print server. <b>Note:</b> This menu is available only when the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
<b>ENA Netmask</b> YYY.YYY.YYY.YYY	Set the netmask information for an external print server. <b>Note:</b> This menu is available only when the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
<b>ENA Gateway</b> YYY.YYY.YYY.YYY	Set the gateway information for an external print server. <b>Note:</b> This menu is available only when the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

## Parallel [x] menu

**Note:** This menu appears only when an optional parallel card is installed.

Use	To
<b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>PS SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>NPA Mode</b> On Off Auto	Set the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Parallel Buffer</b> Disabled Auto 3K to [maximum size allowed]	Set the size of the parallel input buffer. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Disabled turns off job buffering. Any print jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes.</li> <li>The parallel buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments.</li> <li>The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>To increase the maximum size range for the Parallel Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the USB, serial, and network buffers.</li> <li>Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Job Buffering</b> Off On Auto	Temporarily store print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> <li>Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Advanced Status</b> On Off	Enable bidirectional communication through the parallel port. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Off disables parallel port negotiation.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Protocol</b> Standard Fastbytes	Specify the parallel port protocol. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fastbytes is the factory default setting. It provides compatibility with most existing parallel ports and is the recommended setting.</li> <li>Standard tries to resolve parallel port communication problems.</li> </ul>
<b>Honor Init</b> On Off	Determine if the printer honors printer hardware initialization requests from the computer. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>The computer requests initialization by activating the Init signal from the parallel port. Many personal computers activate the Init signal each time the computer is turned on.</li> </ul>
<b>Parallel Mode 2</b> On Off	Determine if the parallel port data is sampled on the leading or trailing edge of a strobe. <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Mac Binary PS</b> On Off Auto	Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> <li>On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.</li> </ul>
<b>ENA Address</b> YYY.YYY.YYY.YYY	Set the network address information for an external print server. <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
<b>ENA Netmask</b> YYY.YYY.YYY.YYY	Set the netmask information for an external print server. <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
<b>ENA Gateway</b> YYY.YYY.YYY.YYY	Set the gateway information for an external print server. <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

## Serial [x] menu

**Note:** This menu appears only when an optional serial card is installed.

Use	To
<b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>PS SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>NPA Mode</b> On Off Auto	Set the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then processes it appropriately.</li> <li>• When set to On, the printer performs NPA processing. If the data is not in NPA format, it is rejected as bad data.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not perform NPA processing.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Serial Buffer</b> Disabled Auto 3K to [maximum size allowed]	Set the size of the serial input buffer.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the disk are printed before normal processing is resumed.</li> <li>• The serial buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments.</li> <li>• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>• To increase the maximum size range for the Serial Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Job Buffering</b> Off On Auto	Temporarily store print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. The printer does not buffer print jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>• On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>• Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Protocol</b> DTR DTR/DSR XON/XOFF XON/XOFF/DTR XONXOFF/DTRDSR	Select the hardware and software handshaking settings for the serial port. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DTR is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• DTR/DSR is a hardware handshaking setting.</li> <li>• XON/XOFF is a software handshaking setting.</li> <li>• XON/XOFF/DTR and XON/XOFF/DTR/DSR are combined hardware and software handshaking settings.</li> </ul>
<b>Robust XON</b> On Off	Determine whether the printer communicates availability to the computer. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item applies only to the serial port if Serial Protocol is set to XON/XOFF.</li> </ul>
<b>Baud</b> 1200 2400 4800 9600 19200 38400 57600 115200 138200 172800 230400 345600	Specify the rate at which data can be received through the serial port. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 9600 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• 138200, 172800, 230400, and 345600 baud rates are only displayed in the Standard Serial menu. These settings do not appear in the Serial Option 1, Serial Option 2, or Serial Option 3 menus.</li> </ul>
<b>Data Bits</b> 7 8	Specify the number of data bits sent in each transmission frame. <b>Note:</b> 8 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Parity</b> Even Odd None Ignore	Set the parity for serial input and output data frames. <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.
<b>Honor DSR</b> On Off	Determine whether the printer uses the DSR Signal. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• DSR is a handshaking signal used by most serial cables. The serial port uses DSR to distinguish data sent by the computer from data created by electrical noise in the serial cable. The electrical noise can cause stray characters to print. Set this to On to prevent stray characters from printing.</li> </ul>

## SMTP Setup menu

Use	To
<b>Primary SMTP Gateway</b>	Specify SMTP server gateway and port information. <b>Note:</b> 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
<b>Primary SMTP Gateway Port</b>	
<b>Secondary SMTP Gateway</b>	
<b>Secondary SMTP Gateway Port</b>	
<b>SMTP Timeout</b> 5–30	Specify the amount of time in seconds before the server stops trying to send an e-mail. <b>Note:</b> 30 seconds is the factory default setting.
<b>Reply Address</b>	Specify a reply address of up to 128 characters in the e-mail sent by the printer.
<b>Use SSL</b> Disabled Negotiate Required	Set the printer to use SSL for increased security when connecting to the SMTP server. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disabled is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When the Negotiate setting is used, the SMTP server determines if SSL will be used.</li> </ul>
<b>SMTP Server Authentication</b> No authentication required Login/Plain CRAM-MD5 Digest-MD5 NTLM Kerberos 5	Specify the type of user authentication required for scan-to e-mail privileges. <b>Note:</b> “No authentication required” is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Device-Initiated E-mail</b> None Use Device SMTP Credentials	Specify what credentials will be used when communicating to the SMTP server. Some SMTP servers require credentials to send an e-mail.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting for Device-Initiated E-mail and User-Initiated E-mail.</li> <li>• Device Userid and Device Password are used to log in to the SMTP server when Use Device SMTP Credentials is selected.</li> </ul>
<b>User-Initiated E-mail*</b> None Use Device SMTP Credentials Use Session User ID & Password Use Session E-mail address & Password Prompt User	
<b>Device Userid</b>	
<b>Device Password</b>	
<b>Kerberos 5 Realm</b>	
<b>NTLM Domain</b>	

## Security menu

### Edit Security Setups menu

**Note:** This menu appears only in select touch-screen printer models.

Use	To
<b>Edit Backup Password</b> Use Backup Password <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off</li> <li>• On</li> </ul> Password	Create a backup password.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for “Use Backup Password.”</li> <li>• This menu appears only if a backup password exists.</li> </ul>
<b>Edit Building Blocks</b> Internal Accounts NTLM Simple Kerberos Setup Kerberos Setup Active Directory LDAP LDAP+GSSAPI Password PIN	Edit settings for Internal Accounts, NTLM, Simple Kerberos Setup, Kerberos Setup, Active Directory, LDAP, Password, and PIN.
<b>Edit Security Templates</b> [list of available templates]	Add or edit a security template.

Use	To
<p><b>Edit Access Controls</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Administrative Menus</li> <li>Function Access Management</li> <li>Solutions</li> <li>Cancel jobs at the Device</li> </ul>	<p>Control access to printer menus, firmware updates, held jobs, and other access points.</p>

## Miscellaneous Security Settings menu

Use	To
<p><b>Login Restrictions</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Login failures</li> <li>Failure time frame</li> <li>Lockout time</li> <li>Panel Login Timeout</li> <li>Remote Login Timeout</li> </ul>	<p>Limit the number and time frames of failed login attempts from the printer control panel before all users are locked out.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Login failures” specifies the number of failed login attempts before users are locked out. Settings range from 1 to 10. 3 attempts is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• “Failure time frame” specifies the time frame during which failed login attempts can be made before users are locked out. Settings range from 1 to 60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• “Lockout time” specifies how long users are locked out after exceeding the login failures limit. Settings range from 1 to 60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting. 1 indicates the printer does not impose a lockout time.</li> <li>• “Panel Login Timeout” specifies how long the printer remains idle on the Home screen before automatically logging the user off. Settings range from 1 to 900 seconds. 30 seconds is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• “Remote Login Timeout” specifies how long a remote interface remains idle before automatically logging the user off. Settings range from 1 to 120 seconds. 10 minutes is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Security Reset Jumper</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No Effect</li> <li>Access controls=“No Security”</li> <li>Reset factory security defaults</li> </ul>	<p>Change the value of the security settings.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Access controls=“No Security” retains all the security information that the user has defined. “No Security” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• “No Effect” means the reset has no effect on the device security configuration.</li> <li>• “Reset factory security defaults” deletes all security information that the user has defined, and assigns the factory default value to each setting in the Miscellaneous Security Settings section of both the panel and the Embedded Web Server.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Minimum PIN Length</b></p> <p>1–16</p>	<p>Limit the digit length of the PIN.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 4 is the is the factory default setting.</p>

## Confidential Print menu

Use	To
<b>Max Invalid PIN</b> Off 2–10	Limit the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu appears only when a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.</li> <li>• Once the limit is reached, the print jobs for that user name and PIN are deleted.</li> </ul>
<b>Confidential Job Expiration</b> Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Limit the amount of time a confidential print job stays in the printer before it is deleted.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the “Confidential Job Expiration” setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside in the printer RAM or printer hard disk, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value.</li> <li>• If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer RAM are deleted.</li> </ul>
<b>Repeat Job Expiration</b> Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Set a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs.
<b>Verify Job Expiration</b> Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Set a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs needing verification.
<b>Reserve Job Expiration</b> Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Set a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs for printing at a later time.
<b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.	

## Erase Temporary Data Files menu

Erase Temporary Data Files deletes *only* print job data on the printer hard disk that *are not* currently in use by the file system. All permanent data on the printer hard disk are preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.

**Note:** This menu appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.

Use	To
<b>Wiping Mode</b> Auto	Specify the mode for erasing temporary data files.

Use	To
<b>Automatic Method</b> Single pass Multiple pass	Mark all disk space used by a previous print job. This method does not permit the file system to reuse this space until it has been cleared.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Single pass” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Only automatic wiping enables users to erase temporary data files without having to turn off the printer for an extended amount of time.</li> <li>• Highly confidential information should be erased using <i>only</i> the Multiple pass method.</li> </ul>

## Security Audit Log menu

Use	To
<b>Export Log</b>	Let an authorized user export the audit log.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To export the audit log from the printer control panel, a flash drive must be attached to the printer.</li> <li>• The audit log can be downloaded from the Embedded Web Server and saved on a computer.</li> </ul>
<b>Delete Log</b> Yes No	Specify whether or not audit logs are deleted.  <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Configure Log</b> Enable Audit Yes No Enable Remote Syslog No Yes Remote Syslog Facility 0–23 Severity of events to log 0–7	Specify how and whether or not audit logs are created.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable Audit determines if events are recorded in the secure audit log and remote syslog. No is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Enable Remote Syslog determines if logs are sent to a remote server. No is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Remote Syslog Facility determines the value used to send logs to the remote syslog server. 4 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• If the security audit log is activated, then the severity value of each event is recorded. 4 is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>

## Set Date/Time menu

Use	To
<b>Current Date and Time</b>	View the current date and time settings for the printer.
<b>Manually Set Date and Time</b>	Enter the date and time.  <b>Note:</b> Date/Time is set in YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS format.
<b>Time Zone</b>	Select the time zone.  <b>Note:</b> GMT is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Automatically Observe DST</b> On Off	Set the printer to use the applicable daylight saving time (DST) start and end times associated with the printer Time Zone setting.  <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting and uses the applicable Daylight Saving Time associated with the Time Zone setting.
<b>Enable NTP</b> On Off	Enable Network Time Protocol, which synchronizes the clocks of devices on a network.  <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

## Settings menu

### General Settings menu

Use	To
<b>Display Language</b> English Francais Deutsch Italiano Espanol Dansk Norsk Nederlands Svenska Portuguese Suomi Russian Polski Greek Magyar Turkce Cesky Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Korean Japanese	Set the language of the text that appears on the printer display.  <b>Note:</b> Not all languages are available for all printer models.
<b>Show Supply Estimates</b> Show estimates Do not show estimates	Get an estimate on the status of supplies.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Show estimates displays the estimated supply status in pages on the control panel, printer Web page, and on the Menu Settings and the Device Statistics reports.</li> <li>• Do not show estimates hides the estimated supply status in any location.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<p><b>Eco-Mode</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>Energy</li> <li>Energy/Paper</li> <li>Paper</li> </ul>	<p>Minimize the use of energy, paper, or specialty media.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For touch-screen printer models, touch <b>Eco-Mode</b>, and then select from the options.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. Off resets the printer to its factory default settings.</li> <li>• Energy minimizes the power used by the printer. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.</li> <li>• Energy/Paper minimizes the use of power and of paper and specialty media.</li> <li>• Paper minimizes the amount of paper and specialty media needed for a print job. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Quiet Mode</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>On</li> </ul>	<p>Reduce the amount of noise produced by the printer.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For touch-screen printer models, touch <b>Quiet Mode</b>, and then select from the options.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. This setting supports the performance specifications for your printer.</li> <li>• On configures the printer to produce as little noise as possible. This setting is best suited for printing text and line art.</li> <li>• Selecting Photo from the printer driver may disable Quiet mode and provide better print quality and full-speed printing.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Run Initial setup</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	<p>Instruct the printer to run the setup wizard.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• After completing the setup wizard by selecting <b>Done</b> at the Country select screen, the default becomes No.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<p><b>Keyboard</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keyboard Type                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>English</li> <li>Francais</li> <li>Francais Canadien</li> <li>Deutsch</li> <li>Italiano</li> <li>Espanol</li> <li>Greek</li> <li>Dansk</li> <li>Norsk</li> <li>Nederlands</li> <li>Svenska</li> <li>Suomi</li> <li>Portuguese</li> <li>Russian</li> <li>Polski</li> <li>Swiss German</li> <li>Swiss French</li> <li>Korean</li> <li>Magyar</li> <li>Turkish</li> <li>Czech</li> <li>Simplified Chinese</li> <li>Traditional Chinese</li> <li>Japanese</li> </ul> </li> <li>Custom Key 1</li> <li>Custom Key 2</li> </ul>	<p>Specify a language and custom key information for the control panel keyboard. The additional tabs enable access to accent marks and symbols from the keypad on the control panel.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• Custom Key 2 appears only in select touch-screen printer models.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Paper Sizes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>US</li> <li>Metric</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the unit of measurement for paper sizes.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• US is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The initial setting is determined by your country or region selection in the initial setup wizard.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<p><b>Displayed Information</b></p> <p>Left side</p> <p>Right side</p>	<p>Specify what is displayed on the upper left and right corners of the control panel.</p> <p>For the Left side and Right side options, select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None</li> <li>IP Address</li> <li>Hostname</li> <li>Contact Name</li> <li>Location</li> <li>Date/Time</li> <li>mDNS/DDNS Service Name</li> <li>Zero Configuration Name</li> <li>Custom Text [x]</li> <li>Model Name</li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• IP Address is the factory default setting for Left side.</li> <li>• Date/Time is the factory default setting for Right side.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Displayed Information (continued)</b></p> <p>Custom Text [x]</p>	<p>Customize displayed information that will appear on the upper left and right corners of the control panel.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</p>
<p><b>Displayed Information (continued)</b></p> <p>Black Toner</p>	<p>Customize the displayed information for Black Toner.</p> <p>Select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When to display             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[text entry]</li> </ul> </li> <li>Alternate             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[text entry]</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• Do not display is the factory default setting for When to display.</li> <li>• Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<p><b>Displayed Information (continued)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Paper Jam</li> <li>Load Paper</li> <li>Service Errors</li> </ul>	<p>Customize the displayed information for Paper Jam, Load Paper, and Service Errors.</p> <p>Select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[text entry]</li> </ul> </li> <li>Alternate                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[text entry]</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• No is the factory default setting for Display.</li> <li>• Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Home screen customization</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change Language</li> <li>Search Held Jobs</li> <li>Held Jobs</li> <li>USB Drive</li> <li>Profiles and Apps</li> <li>Bookmarks</li> <li>Jobs by user</li> </ul>	<p>Change the icons and buttons that appear on the control panel.</p> <p>For each icon or button, select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display</li> <li>Do not display</li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Profiles and Apps appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• Display is the factory default setting for Search Held Jobs, Held jobs, and USB Drive.</li> <li>• Do not display is the factory default setting for Change Language, Profiles and Apps, Bookmarks, and Jobs by user.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Home screen customization</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Forms and Favorites</li> <li>Background and Idle Screen</li> <li>Eco-Settings</li> </ul>	<p>Change the icons and buttons that appear on the control panel.</p> <p>For each icon or button, select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display</li> <li>Do not display</li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forms and Favorites, Background and Idle Screen, and Eco-Settings appear only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• Display is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Date Format</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MM-DD-YYYY</li> <li>DD-MM-YYYY</li> <li>YYYY-MM-DD</li> </ul>	<p>Format the printer date.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• MM-DD-YYYY is the US factory default setting.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Time Format</b> 12 hour A.M./P.M. 24 hour clock	Format the printer time. <b>Note:</b> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.
<b>Screen Brightness</b> 20–100	Specify the brightness of the display. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>100 is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Output Lighting</b> Normal/Standby Mode Off Dim Bright	Set the amount of light from the bin. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If Eco-Mode is set to Energy or Energy/Paper, then the factory default setting is Dim.</li> <li>If Eco-Mode is set to Off or set to Paper, then the factory default setting is Bright.</li> <li>This menu appears only when an indicator light is installed on the bin or when an optional bin with an indicator light is added.</li> </ul>
<b>Audio Feedback</b> Button Feedback On Off Volume 1–10	Specify whether icons and buttons have audio feedback. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>On is the factory default setting for Button Feedback.</li> <li>5 is the factory default setting for Volume.</li> </ul>
<b>Show Bookmarks</b> Yes No	Specify whether bookmarks are displayed from the Held Jobs area. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>Yes is the factory default setting. When Yes is selected, bookmarks appear in the Held Jobs area.</li> </ul>
<b>Web Page Refresh Rate</b> 30–300	Specify the number of seconds between Embedded Web Server refreshes. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>120 is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Contact Name</b>	Specify a contact name for the printer. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>The contact name will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Location</b>	Specify the location of the printer. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• The location will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.</li> </ul>
<b>Alarms</b> Alarm Control Cartridge Alarm Staple Alarm Hole Punch Alarm	Set an alarm to sound when the printer requires user intervention. For each alarm type, select from the following options: Off Single Continuous <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Single is the factory default setting for Alarm Control. Single sounds three quick beeps.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for Cartridge Alarm, Staple Alarm, and Hole Punch Alarm. Off means no alarm will sound.</li> <li>• Continuous repeats three beeps every 10 seconds.</li> </ul>
<b>Timeouts</b> Standby Mode Disabled 1–240	Specify the number of minutes of inactivity before the printer enters a lower power state. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Standby Mode appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• 15 is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Timeouts</b> Sleep Mode Disabled 1–120	Set the amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it goes into a reduced power state. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 20 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Disabled appears only when Energy Conserve is set to Off.</li> <li>• Lower settings conserve more energy, but may require longer warm-up times.</li> <li>• Select a high setting if the printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to print with minimum warm-up time.</li> </ul>
<b>Timeouts</b> Print with Display Off Allow printing with display off Display on when printing	Allow the printer to print even when the display is off. <b>Note:</b> Display on when printing is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Hibernate Timeout</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disabled</li> <li>20 minutes</li> <li>1 hour</li> <li>2 hours</li> <li>3 hours</li> <li>6 hours</li> <li>1 day</li> <li>2 days</li> <li>3 days</li> <li>1 week</li> <li>2 weeks</li> <li>1 month</li> </ul>	<p>Set the amount of time the printer waits before it enters Hibernate mode.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the Hibernate Timeout timer expires, the printer uses Ethernet connection to check the value of Hibernate Timeout on Connection.</li> <li>• If Hibernate Timeout on Connection is set to Do Not Hibernate, then the printer never automatically hibernates.</li> <li>• If Hibernate Timeout on Connection is set to Hibernate, then the printer follows the Hibernate Timeout value, except when it is set to Disabled.</li> <li>• 3 days is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Screen Timeout</p> <p>15–300 sec</p>	<p>Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits before returning the display to a ready state.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 30 sec is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Prolong Screen Timeout</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>On</li> </ul>	<p>Set the printer to continue the specified job without returning to the home screen when the Screen Timeout timer expires.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Prolong Screen Timeout appears only in touch-screen printer models.</li> <li>• On allows the user to reset the Screen Timeout timer instead of returning to ready state.</li> <li>• Off follows the normal Screen Timeout value.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Print Timeout</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disabled</li> <li>1–255 sec</li> </ul>	<p>Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits to receive an end-of-job message before canceling the remainder of the print job.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 90 sec is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When the timer expires, any partially printed page still in the printer is printed, and then the printer checks to see if any new print jobs are waiting.</li> <li>• Print Timeout is available only when using PCL emulation. This setting has no effect on PostScript emulation print jobs.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Wait Timeout</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disabled</li> <li>15–65535 sec</li> </ul>	<p>Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits for additional data before canceling a print job.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 40 sec is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Wait Timeout is available only when the printer is using PostScript emulation. This setting has no effect on PCL emulation print jobs.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Timeouts</b> Job Hold Timeout 5–255 sec	Set the amount of time the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources and continues to print other jobs in the print queue.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 30 sec is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu appears only when a printer hard disk is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Error Recovery</b> Auto Reboot Reboot when idle Reboot always Reboot never Max Auto Reboots 1–20	Set the printer to restart when an error is encountered.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reboot always is the factory default setting for Auto Reboot.</li> <li>• 5 is the factory default setting for Max Auto Reboots.</li> <li>• If the printer performs the same number of automatic reboots that is set in the printer within a certain amount of time, then the printer shows the applicable error instead of rebooting.</li> </ul>
<b>Error Recovery</b> Max Auto Reboots 1–20	Set the number of automatic reboots that the printer can perform.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• If the printer performs a number of automatic reboots that is the same as the menu setting within a certain amount of time, then the printer displays the applicable error instead of rebooting.</li> </ul>
<b>Print Recovery</b> Auto Continue Disabled 5–255	Let the printer automatically continue printing from certain offline situations when these are not resolved within the specified time period.  <b>Note:</b> Disabled is the factory default setting.
<b>Print Recovery</b> Jam Recovery On Off Auto	Specify whether the printer reprints jammed pages.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks.</li> <li>• On sets the printer to always reprint jammed pages.</li> <li>• Off sets the printer to never reprint jammed pages.</li> </ul>
<b>Print Recovery</b> Jam Assist On Off	Set the printer to check for jammed paper automatically.  <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Print Recovery</b> Page Protect Off On	Let the printer successfully print a page that may not have printed otherwise.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. Off prints a partial page when there is not enough memory to print the whole page.</li> <li>• On sets the printer to process the whole page so that the entire page prints.</li> </ul>
<b>Hibernate Timeout on Connection</b> Do Not Hibernate Hibernate	Set the printer to Hibernate Timeout even when there is an active Ethernet connection.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Hibernate Timeout on Connection is set to Do Not Hibernate, then the printer never automatically hibernates.</li> <li>• If Hibernate Timeout on Connection is set to Hibernate, then the printer follows the value of the Hibernate Timeout setting, except when it is set to Disabled.</li> <li>• Do Not Hibernate is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Press Sleep Button</b> Do nothing Sleep Hibernate	Determine how the printer, while in idle state, reacts to a short press of the Sleep button.  <b>Note:</b> Sleep is the factory default setting.
<b>Press and Hold Sleep Button</b> Do nothing Sleep Hibernate	Determine how the printer, while in idle state, reacts when you press and hold the Sleep button.  <b>Note:</b> Do nothing is the factory default setting.
<b>Factory Defaults</b> Do Not Restore Restore Now	Restore the printer settings to the factory default settings.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do Not Restore is the factory default setting. Do Not Restore keeps the user-defined settings.</li> <li>• Restore Now returns all printer settings to the factory default settings except Network/Ports menu settings. All downloads stored in the RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in the flash memory or in the printer hard disk are not affected.</li> </ul>
<b>Custom Home Message</b> Off IP Address Hostname Contact Name Location Zero Configuration Name Custom Text 1	Select Custom Home Messages on the printer display.  <b>Note:</b> This menu appears only in non-touch-screen printer models.

Use	To
<b>Export Configuration Package</b> Export	Export the printer configuration package to a flash drive. <b>Note:</b> The configuration package cannot be exported unless a flash drive is attached to the printer.

## Flash Drive Menu

### Print Settings menu

Use	To
<b>Copies</b> 1–999	Specify a default number of copies for each print job. <b>Note:</b> 1 is the factory default setting.
<b>Paper Source</b> Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder <sup>1</sup> MP Feeder <sup>2</sup> Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Set a default paper source for all print jobs. <b>Note:</b> Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
<b>Collate</b> (1,1,1) (2,2,2) (1,2,3) (1,2,3)	Stack the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies. <b>Note:</b> “(1,2,3) (1,2,3)” is the factory default setting.
<b>Sides (Duplex)</b> 1 sided 2 sided	Specify whether prints are on one side or on both sides of the page. <b>Note:</b> 1 sided is the factory default setting.
<b>Staple</b> Off On	Specify whether prints are stapled. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• On allows the printer to staple print jobs.</li> <li>• This menu appears only when a supported staple finisher is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Hole Punch</b> Off On	Specify whether prints have holes for binding. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu appears only when a supported staple, hole punch finisher is installed.</li> </ul>
<sup>1</sup> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models. <sup>2</sup> This menu appears only in non-touch-screen printer models.	

Use	To
<b>Hole Punch Mode</b> 2 holes 3 holes 4 holes	Specify the number of holes to be made on the prints.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “3 holes” is the U.S. factory default setting. “4 holes” is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu appears only when a supported staple, hole punch finisher is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Duplex Binding</b> Long Edge Short Edge	Define the way duplexed pages are bound and printed.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Long Edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). This is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Short Edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Orientation</b> Auto Landscape Portrait	Specify the orientation of a multiple-page document.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This setting affects jobs if the value of the Paper Saver setting in the same menu is not set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver</b> Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specify that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a paper.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Border</b> None Solid	Print a border on each page image when using N-Up (pages per side).  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This setting affects jobs if the value of the Paper Saver setting in the same menu is not set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Ordering</b> Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specify the positioning of multiple-page images when using N-Up (pages per side).  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Horizontal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.</li> <li>• This setting affects jobs if the value of the Paper Saver setting in the same menu is not set to Off.</li> </ul>

<sup>1</sup> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.

<sup>2</sup> This menu appears only in non-touch-screen printer models.

Use	To
<b>Separator Sheets</b> Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specify if blank separator sheets are inserted. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to “(1,2,3) (1,2,3).” If Collate is set to “(1,1,1) (2,2,2),” then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's.</li> <li>• Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs.</li> <li>• Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of the print job. This setting is useful when printing on transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document for notes.</li> </ul>
<b>Separator Sheet Source</b> Tray [x] Manual Feeder Multipurpose Feeder <sup>1</sup> MP Feeder <sup>2</sup>	Specify the paper source for the separator sheet. <b>Note:</b> Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
<b>Blank Pages</b> Do Not Print Print	Specify if blank pages are inserted in a print job. <b>Note:</b> Do Not Print is the factory default setting.
<sup>1</sup> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models. <sup>2</sup> This menu appears only in non-touch-screen printer models.	

## Print Settings

### Setup menu

Use	To
<b>Printer Language</b> PCL Emulation PS Emulation	Set the default printer language. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PCL Emulation is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• PostScript emulation uses a PostScript interpreter for processing print jobs.</li> <li>• PCL Emulation uses a PCL interpreter for processing print jobs.</li> <li>• Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<p><b>Job Waiting</b></p> <p>On Off</p>	<p>Specify that print jobs be removed from the print queue when they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. They are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information or options, or both are obtained, the stored jobs print.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Print Area</b></p> <p>Normal Fit to Page Whole Page</p>	<p>Set the logical and physical printable area.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.</li> <li>• Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.</li> <li>• Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Download Target</b></p> <p>RAM Flash Disk</p>	<p>Set the storage location for downloads.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RAM is the factory default setting. Storing downloads in the RAM is temporary.</li> <li>• Storing downloads in a flash memory or in a printer hard disk places them in permanent storage. Downloads remain in the flash memory or printer hard disk even when the printer is turned off.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only if an optional flash memory or a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Resource Save</b></p> <p>On Off</p>	<p>Specify how the printer handles temporary downloads, such as fonts and macros stored in the RAM, when the printer receives a print job that requires more than the available memory.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. This sets the printer to retain downloads only until memory is needed. Downloads are deleted in order to process print jobs.</li> <li>• On sets the printer to retain downloads during language changes and printer resets. If the printer runs out of memory, then <b>Memory Full [38]</b> appears on the printer display, but downloads are not deleted.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<p><b>Print All Order</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alphabetical</li> <li>Oldest First</li> <li>Newest First</li> </ul>	<p>Specify the order in which held and confidential jobs are printed when Print All is selected.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Alphabetical is the factory default setting.</p>

### Finishing menu

Use	To
<p><b>Sides (Duplex)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 sided</li> <li>2 sided</li> </ul>	<p>Specify whether two-sided (duplex) printing is set as the default for all print jobs.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “1 sided” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• You can set two-sided printing from the printer software. For Windows users: Click <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then click <b>Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup</b>. For Macintosh users: Choose <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then adjust the settings from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Duplex Binding</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Long Edge</li> <li>Short Edge</li> </ul>	<p>Define the way duplexed pages are bound and printed.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Long Edge is the factory default setting. Long Edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape).</li> <li>• Short Edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).</li> </ul>
<p><b>Copies</b></p> <p>1–999</p>	<p>Specify the default number of copies for each print job.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 1 is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Blank Pages</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do Not Print</li> <li>Print</li> </ul>	<p>Specify whether blank pages are inserted in a print job.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Do Not Print is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Collate</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1,1,1) (2,2,2)</li> <li>(1,2,3) (1,2,3)</li> </ul>	<p>Stack the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> “(1,1,1) (2,2,2)” is the factory default setting.</p>

<sup>1</sup> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.

<sup>2</sup> This menu appears only in non-touch-screen printer models.

Use	To
<b>Separator Sheets</b> Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specify whether blank separator sheets are inserted. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to "(1,2,3) (1,2,3)." If Collate is set to "(1,1,1) (2,2,2)," then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's.</li> <li>• Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs.</li> <li>• Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of a print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document.</li> </ul>
<b>Separator Source</b> Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder <sup>1</sup> MP Feeder <sup>2</sup>	Specify the paper source for the separator sheet. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, set Configure MP to "Cassette" for Multipurpose Feeder or MP Feeder to appear as a menu setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver</b> Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Print multiple-page images on one side of a paper. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Ordering</b> Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specify the positioning of multiple-page images when using Paper Saver. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Horizontal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Orientation</b> Auto Landscape Portrait	Specify the orientation of a multiple-page document. <b>Note:</b> Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape.
<b>Paper Saver Border</b> None Solid	Print a border when using Paper Saver. <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.

<sup>1</sup> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models.

<sup>2</sup> This menu appears only in non-touch-screen printer models.

Use	To
<b>Staple Job</b> Off On	Specify whether printed output is stapled. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu appears only when a supported staple finisher is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Run Stapler Test</b>	Print a report that confirms that the staple finisher is functioning properly. <b>Note:</b> This menu appears only when a supported staple finisher is installed.
<b>Hole Punch</b> On Off	Specify whether holes will be created on printed outputs for the purpose of collecting the sheets in a binder or folder. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu appears only when a supported staple, hole punch finisher is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Hole Punch Mode</b> 2 holes 3 holes 4 holes	Specify the number of holes to be created on printed outputs for the purpose of collecting the sheets in a binder or folder. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “3 holes” is the U.S. factory default setting. “4 holes” is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu appears only when a supported staple, hole punch finisher is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Offset Pages</b> None Between Copies Between Jobs	Offset pages at certain instances. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to “(1,2,3) (1,2,3).” If Collate is set to “(1,1,1) (2,2,2),” then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's.</li> <li>• Between Jobs sets the same offset position for the entire print job regardless of the number of copies printed.</li> <li>• This menu appears only when a supported staple finisher is installed.</li> </ul>
<sup>1</sup> This menu appears only in touch-screen printer models. <sup>2</sup> This menu appears only in non-touch-screen printer models.	

## Quality menu

Use	To
<b>Print Resolution</b> 300 dpi 600 dpi 1200 dpi 1200 Image Q 2400 Image Q	Specify the printed output resolution in dots per inch. <b>Note:</b> 600 dpi is the factory default setting.
<b>Pixel Boost</b> Off Fonts Horizontally Vertically Both directions	Enable more pixels to print in clusters for clarity, in order to enhance images horizontally or vertically, or to enhance fonts. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Toner Darkness</b> 1–10	Lighten or darken the printed output. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Selecting a smaller number can help conserve toner.</li> </ul>
<b>Enhance Fine Lines</b> On Off	Enable a print mode preferable for files such as architectural drawings, maps, electrical circuit diagrams, and flow charts. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• To set this option using the Embedded Web Server, type the network printer IP address in the Web browser address field.</li> </ul>
<b>Gray Correction</b> Auto Off	Automatically adjust the contrast enhancement applied to images. <b>Note:</b> Auto is the factory default setting.
<b>Brightness</b> -6 to 6	Adjust the printed output either by lightening or darkening it. You can conserve toner by lightening the output. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>Contrast</b> 0–5	Adjust the contrast of printed objects. <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.

## Job Accounting menu

**Note:** This menu item appears only when a printer hard disk is installed. Make sure that the hard disk is not read/write- or write-protected.

Use	To
<b>Job Accounting Log</b> Off On	Set if the printer creates a log of the print jobs it receives. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Job Accounting Utilities</b>	Print and delete log files or export them to a flash drive.
<b>Accounting Log Frequency</b> Daily Weekly Monthly	Set how often a log file is created. <b>Note:</b> Monthly is the factory default setting.
<b>Log Action at End of Frequency</b> None E-mail Current Log E-mail & Delete Current Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log	Set how the printer responds when the frequency threshold expires. <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.
<b>Log Near Full Level</b> Off 1–99	Specify the maximum size of the log file before the printer executes the Log Action at Near Full. <b>Note:</b> 5 is the factory default setting.
<b>Log Action at Near Full</b> None E-mail Current Log E-mail & Delete Current Log E-mail & Delete Oldest Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All Logs Delete All But Current	Set how the printer responds when the hard disk is nearly full. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The value defined in Log Near Full Level determines when this action is triggered.</li> </ul>
<b>Log Action at Full</b> None E-mail & Delete Current Log E-mail & Delete Oldest Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All Logs Delete All But Current	Set how the printer responds when disk usage reaches the maximum limit (100MB). <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.
<b>URL to Post Logs</b>	Set where the printer posts job accounting logs.
<b>E-mail to Send Logs</b>	Specify the e-mail address to which the device sends job accounting logs.
<b>Log File Prefix</b>	Specify the prefix you want for the log file name. <b>Note:</b> The current host name defined in the TCP/IP menu is used as the default log file prefix.

## Utilities menu

Use	To
<b>Remove Held Jobs</b> Confidential Held Not Restored All	Delete confidential and held jobs from the printer hard disk.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selecting a setting affects only print jobs that are stored in the printer hard disk. Bookmarks, print jobs on flash drives, and other types of held jobs are not affected.</li> <li>• Not Restored removes all Print and Hold jobs that are not restored from the printer hard disk or printer memory.</li> </ul>
<b>Format Flash</b> Yes No	Format the flash memory.  <b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not turn off the printer while the flash memory is being formatted.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes deletes all data stored in the flash memory.</li> <li>• No cancels the format request.</li> <li>• Flash memory refers to the memory added by installing a flash memory card in the printer.</li> <li>• The flash memory option card must not be read/write- or write-protected.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when a formatted, working flash memory card is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Delete Downloads on Disk</b> Delete Now Do Not Delete	Delete downloads from the printer hard disk, including all held jobs, buffered jobs, and parked jobs.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Delete Now sets the printer to delete the downloads and allows the display to return to the originating screen after the deletion.</li> <li>• Do Not Delete sets the printer display to return to the main Utilities menu.</li> </ul>
<b>Activate Hex Trace</b>	Assist in isolating the source of a print job problem.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When activated, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation, and control codes are not executed.</li> <li>• To exit or deactivate Hex Trace, turn off the printer.</li> </ul>
<b>Coverage Estimator</b> Off On	Provide an estimate of the percentage coverage of toner on a page. The estimate is printed on a separate page at the end of each print job.  <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

## XPS menu

Use	To
<b>Print Error Pages</b> Off On	Print a page containing information on errors, including XML markup errors.  <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

## PDF menu

Use	To
<b>Scale to Fit</b> Yes No	Scale page content to fit the selected paper size. <b>Note:</b> No is the factory default setting.
<b>Annotations</b> Do Not Print Print	Print annotations in a PDF. <b>Note:</b> Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

## PostScript menu

Use	To
<b>Print PS Error</b> On Off	Print a page containing the PostScript error. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Lock PS Startup Mode</b> On Off	Disable the SysStart file. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Font Priority</b> Resident Flash/Disk	Establish the font search order. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Resident is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item is available only when a formatted flash memory option card or printer hard disk is installed and operating properly.</li> <li>• Make sure the flash memory option or printer hard disk is not read/write-, write-, or password-protected.</li> <li>• Job Buffer Size must not be set to 100%.</li> </ul>

## PCL Emul menu

Use	To
<b>Font Source</b> Resident Disk Download Flash All	Specify the set of fonts used by the Font Name menu. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Resident” is the factory default setting. Resident shows the factory default set of fonts downloaded in the RAM.</li> <li>• “Flash” and “Disk” settings show all fonts resident in that option.</li> <li>• The flash option must be properly formatted and cannot be read/write-, write-, or password-protected.</li> <li>• “Download” shows all the fonts downloaded in the RAM.</li> <li>• “All” shows all fonts available to any option.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>Font Name</b> Courier 10	Identify a specific font and the option where it is stored. <b>Note:</b> Courier 10 is the factory default setting. Courier 10 shows the font name, font ID, and the storage location in the printer. The font source abbreviation is R for Resident, F for Flash, K for Disk, and D for Download.
<b>Symbol Set</b> 10U PC-8 12U PC-850	Specify the symbol set for each font name. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10U PC-8 is the US factory default setting. 12U PC-850 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• A symbol set is a set of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text. Only the supported symbol sets are shown.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Point Size 1.00–1008.00	Change the point size for scalable typographic fonts. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 12 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Point size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 0.014 inch.</li> <li>• Point sizes can be increased or decreased in 0.25-point increments.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Pitch 0.08–100	Specify the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters per inch (cpi).</li> <li>• Pitch can be increased or decreased in 0.01-cpi increments.</li> <li>• For nonscalable monospaced fonts, the pitch appears on the display but it cannot be changed.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Portrait is the factory default setting. Portrait prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the page.</li> <li>• Landscape prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the page.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Lines per Page 1–255	Specify the number of lines that print on each page. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 60 is the US factory default setting. 64 is the international default setting.</li> <li>• The printer sets the amount of space between each line based on the Lines per Page, Paper Size, and Orientation settings. Select the Paper Size and Orientation you want before setting Lines per Page.</li> </ul>

Use	To
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> A4 Width 198 mm 203 mm	Set the printer to print on A4-size paper.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “198 mm” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The 203-mm setting sets the width of the page to allow printing of eighty 10-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Auto CR after LF On Off	Specify whether the printer automatically performs a carriage return (CR) after a line feed (LF) control command.  <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Auto LF after CR On Off	Specify whether the printer automatically performs a line feed (LF) after a carriage return (CR) control command.  <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Tray Renumber</b> Assign MP Feeder Off None 0–199 Assign Tray [x] Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Paper Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Env Off None 0–199	Configure the printer to work with printer software or programs that use different source assignments for trays and feeders.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Off” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• “None” ignores the Select Paper Feed command. This option appears only when it is selected by the PCL 5 interpreter.</li> <li>• “0–199” allows a custom setting to be assigned.</li> </ul>
<b>Tray Renumber</b> View Factory Defaults MPF Default = 8 T1 Default = 1 T1 Default = 4 T1 Default = 5 T1 Default = 20 T1 Default = 21 Env Default = 6 MPaper Default = 2 MEnv Default = 3	Display the factory default setting assigned to each tray or feeder.

Use	To
<b>Tray Renumber</b> Restore Defaults Yes No	Restore all tray and feeder assignments to the factory default settings.

## PPDS menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Orientation</b> Portrait Landscape	Sets the orientation of the text and graphics on the page <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Portrait is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Settings are duplicated in the PCL Emulation menu.</li> </ul>
<b>Lines per Page</b> 1–255	Sets the number of lines that print on each page <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 64 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The printer sets the amount of space between each line based on the Lines per Page, Paper Size, and Orientation settings. Select the desired Paper Size and Orientation before setting Lines per Page.</li> </ul>
<b>Lines per Inch</b> 0.25–30.00	Sets the number of lines that print per inch <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 6 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Lines per Inch can be increased or decreased in 0.25-inch increments</li> </ul>
<b>Page Format</b> Print Whole	Sets the logical and physical printable area of the page <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Print is the factory default setting. Print data maintains its position with respect to edge of the paper.</li> <li>• When Whole is selected, document margins are calculated from the top left corner of the physical edge of the page.</li> <li>• Printing does not occur outside the printable area.</li> </ul>
<b>Character Set</b> 1 2	Specifies a default character set for PPDS print jobs <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2 is the factory default setting. Character Set 2 is composed of printable characters and symbols used in non-US English languages.</li> <li>• When Characters Set 1 is selected, values given to the printer are interpreted as printer commands.</li> </ul>
<b>Best Fit</b> On Off	Replaces a missing font with a similar font <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting. If the requested font is not found, the printer will use a similar font.

Menu item	Description
<b>Tray 1 Renumber</b> Off Tray 2	Configures the printer to work with printer software or programs that use different source assignments for trays, drawers, and feeders <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li><li>• Tray 2 is displayed only when it is installed.</li></ul>
<b>Auto CR after LF</b> On Off	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a carriage return (CR) after a line feed (LF) control command <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li><li>• Settings are duplicated in the PCL Emulation menu.</li></ul>
<b>Auto LF after CR</b> On Off	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a line feed (LF) after a carriage return (CR) control command <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li><li>• Settings are duplicated in the PCL Emulation menu.</li></ul>

### HTML menu

Use		To
<b>Font Name</b> Albertus MT Antique Olive Apple Chancery Arial MT Avant Garde Bodoni Bookman Chicago Clarendon Cooper Black Copperplate Coronet Courier Eurostile Garamond Geneva Gill Sans Goudy Helvetica Hoefler Text Intl CG Times Intl Courier Intl Univers	Joanna MT Letter Gothic Lubalin Graph Marigold MonaLisa Recut Monaco New CenturySbk New York Optima Oxford Palatino StempelGaramond Taffy Times TimesNewRoman Univers Zapf Chancery NewSansMTJA NewSansMTCS NewSansMTCT NewSansMTKO	Set the default font for HTML documents.  <b>Note:</b> The Times font is used in HTML documents that do not specify a font.

Use	To
<b>Font Size</b> 1–255 pt	Set the default font size for HTML documents.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 12 pt is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Font size can be increased in 1-point increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Scale</b> 1–400%	Scale the default font for HTML documents.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 100% is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Scaling can be increased in 1% increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Orientation</b> Portrait Landscape	Set the page orientation for HTML documents.  <b>Note:</b> Portrait is the factory default setting.

Use	To
<b>Margin Size</b> 8–255 mm	Set the page margin for HTML documents.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 19 mm is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Margin size can be increased in 1-mm increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Backgrounds</b> Do Not Print Print	Specify whether to print backgrounds on HTML documents.  <b>Note:</b> Print is the factory default setting.

## Image menu

Use	To
<b>Auto Fit</b> On Off	Select the optimal paper size, scaling, and orientation.  <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting. It overrides scaling and orientation settings for some images.
<b>Invert</b> On Off	Invert bitonal monochrome images.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This setting does not apply to GIF or JPEG images.</li> </ul>
<b>Scaling</b> Anchor Top Left Best Fit Anchor Center Fit Height/Width Fit Height Fit Width	Scale the image to fit the selected paper size.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Best Fit is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When Auto Fit is set to On, Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit.</li> </ul>
<b>Orientation</b> Portrait Landscape Reverse Portrait Reverse Landscape	Set the image orientation.  <b>Note:</b> Portrait is the factory default setting.

## Help menu

Menu item	Description
Print All Guides	Prints all the guides
Print Quality	Provides information about solving print quality issues
Printing Guide	Provides information about loading paper and other specialty media
Media Guide	Provides a list of the paper sizes supported in trays and feeders
Print Defects Guide	Provides a template for determining the cause of repeating print quality defects, and lists settings that can be used to adjust print quality

Menu item	Description
Menu Map	Provides a list of the control panel menus and settings
Information Guide	Provides help in locating additional information
Connection Guide	Provides information about connecting the printer locally (USB) or to a network
Moving Guide	Provides instructions for safely moving the printer
Supplies Guide	Provides information about ordering supplies

# Saving money and the environment

Lexmark is committed to environmental sustainability and is continually improving its printers to reduce their impact on the environment. We design with the environment in mind, engineer our packaging to reduce materials, and provide collection and recycling programs. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com/environment](http://www.lexmark.com/environment)
- The Lexmark recycling program at [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle)

By selecting certain printer settings or tasks, you may be able to reduce your printer's impact even further. This chapter outlines the settings and tasks that may yield a greater environmental benefit.

## Adjusting the brightness of the printer display

To save energy, or if you have trouble reading the display, adjust its brightness settings.

### Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > General Settings**.
- 3 In the Screen Brightness field, enter the brightness percentage you want for the display.
- 4 Click **Submit**.

## Saving paper and toner

Studies show that as much as 80% of the carbon footprint of a printer is related to paper usage. You can significantly reduce your carbon footprint by using recycled paper and the following printing suggestions, such as printing on both sides of the paper and printing multiple pages on one side of a single sheet of paper.

For information on how you can quickly save paper and energy using one printer setting, see [“Using Eco-Mode” on page 78](#) or [“Using Eco-Mode” on page 124](#).

### Using recycled paper

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser printers. For more information on recycled papers that work well with your printer, see [“Using recycled paper and other office papers” on page 134](#).

## Conserving supplies

### Use both sides of the paper

If your printer model supports two-sided printing, then you can control whether print appears on one or two sides of the paper.

#### Notes:

- Two-sided printing is the default setting in the print driver.
- For a complete list of supported products and countries, go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.

### Place multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print up to 16 consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto one side of a single sheet of paper by setting multiple page printing (N-Up) for the print job.

### Check your first draft for accuracy

Before printing or making multiple copies of a document:

- Use the preview feature to see how the document looks like before you print it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

### Avoid paper jams

Correctly set the paper type and size to avoid paper jams. For more information, see [“Avoiding jams” on page 214](#).

## Adjusting Sleep mode

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Timeouts** > **Sleep Mode**

2 In the Sleep Mode field, select the number of minutes the printer is idle before it enters Sleep mode.

3 Apply the changes.

## Recycling

Lexmark provides collection programs and environmentally progressive approaches to recycling. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com/environment](http://www.lexmark.com/environment)
- The Lexmark recycling program at [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle)

## Recycling Lexmark products

To return Lexmark products for recycling:

- 1 Go to [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle).
- 2 Find the product type you want to recycle, and then select your country or region from the list.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

**Note:** Printer supplies and hardware not listed in the Lexmark collection program may be recycled through your local recycling center. Contact your local recycling center to determine the items they accept.

## Recycling Lexmark packaging

Lexmark continually strives to minimize packaging. Less packaging helps to ensure that Lexmark printers are transported in the most efficient and environmentally sensitive manner and that there is less packaging to dispose of. These efficiencies result in fewer greenhouse emissions, energy savings, and natural resource savings.

Lexmark cartons are 100% recyclable where corrugated recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

The foam used in Lexmark packaging is recyclable where foam recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

When you return a cartridge to Lexmark, you can reuse the box that the cartridge came in. Lexmark will recycle the box.

## Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling

Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program diverts millions of Lexmark cartridges from landfills annually by making it both easy and free for Lexmark customers to return used cartridges to Lexmark for reuse or recycling. One hundred percent of the empty cartridges returned to Lexmark are either reused or demanufactured for recycling. Boxes used to return the cartridges are also recycled.

To return Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling, follow the instructions that came with your printer or cartridge and use the prepaid shipping label. You can also do the following:

- 1 Go to [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle).
- 2 From the Toner Cartridges section, select your country or region.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

# Maintaining the printer

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Failure to maintain optimum printer performance, or to replace parts and supplies, may cause damage to your printer.

## Ordering supplies

To order parts and supplies in the U.S., contact Lexmark at 1-800-539-6275 for information about Lexmark authorized supplies dealers in your area. In other countries or regions, go to the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

## Using genuine Lexmark parts and supplies

Your Lexmark printer is designed to function best with genuine Lexmark supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components. Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts is not covered by the warranty. All life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark supplies and parts, and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Lexmark printer or its associated components.

## Estimated number of remaining pages

The estimated number of remaining pages is based on the recent printing history of the printer. Its accuracy may vary significantly and is dependent on many factors, such as actual document content, print quality settings, and other printer settings.

The accuracy of the estimated number of remaining pages may decrease when the actual printing consumption is different from the historical printing consumption. Consider the variable level of accuracy before purchasing or replacing supplies based on the estimate. Until an adequate print history is obtained on the printer, the estimated cartridge yield is based on approximately 5% coverage per page.

## Ordering a toner cartridge

### Notes:

- The estimated cartridge yield is based on approximately 5% coverage per page.
- Extremely low print coverage for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield.

Item	Return Program cartridge
Extra High Yield Toner Cartridge	24B6015

## Ordering an imaging unit

Extremely low print coverage for extended periods of time may cause imaging unit parts to fail prior to exhaustion of toner.

For more information on replacing the imaging unit, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.

Part name	Lexmark Return Program
Imaging unit	24B6025

## Ordering staple cartridges

Part name	Part number
Staple cartridges	25A0013

## Ordering a maintenance kit

To identify the supported fuser type, view the label on the fuser. Do either of the following:

- Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit. The two-digit fuser type code (such as 00 or 01) can be seen on the front of the fuser.
  - Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.
- Pull down the printer rear door. The two-digit fuser type code (such as 00 or 01) can be seen on the rear of the fuser.

### Notes:

- Using certain types of paper may require more frequent replacement of the maintenance kit.
- The separator roller, fuser, pick roller assembly, and transfer roller are all included in the maintenance kit and can be individually ordered and replaced if necessary.
- For more information on replacing the parts included in the maintenance kit, see the instruction sheet that came with the part.

### Lexmark Return Program fuser maintenance kit type

Fuser maintenance kit type	Part number
M5100 Series Return Program fuser maintenance kit type 00	40X8420
M5100 Series Return Program fuser maintenance kit type 01	40X8421
M5100 Series Return Program fuser maintenance kit type 02	40X8422
M5100 Series Return Program fuser maintenance kit type 03	40X8423
M5100 Series Return Program fuser maintenance kit type 04	40X8424

### Lexmark regular fuser maintenance kit type

Fuser maintenance kit type	Part number
M5100 Series regular fuser maintenance kit type 05	40X8425
M5100 Series regular fuser maintenance kit type 06	40X8426
M5100 Series regular fuser maintenance kit type 07	40X8427
M5100 Series regular fuser maintenance kit type 08	40X8428
M5100 Series regular fuser maintenance kit type 09	40X8429

## Lexmark roller kit

	Part number
M5100 Series roller kit	40X7706

## Storing supplies

Choose a cool, clean storage area for the printer supplies. Store supplies right side up in their original packing until you are ready to use them.

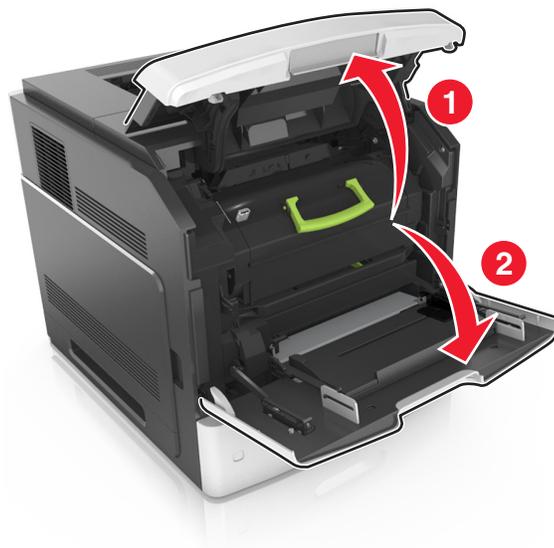
Do not expose supplies to:

- Direct sunlight
- Temperatures above 35°C (95°F)
- High humidity above 80%
- Salty air
- Corrosive gases
- Heavy dust

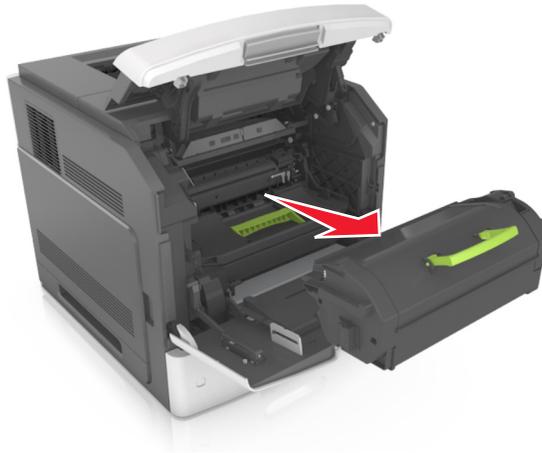
## Replacing supplies

### Replacing the toner cartridge

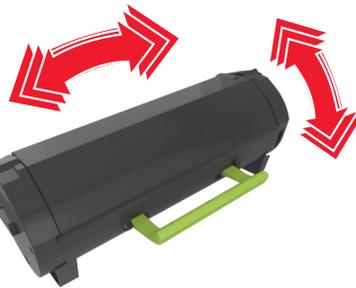
- 1 Lift the front cover, and then pull down the multipurpose feeder door.



- 2 Pull the cartridge out of the printer using the handle.

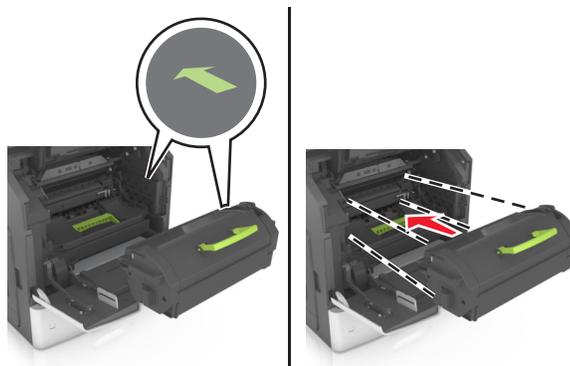


- 3 Unpack the new toner cartridge, then remove the packing material, and then shake the cartridge to redistribute the toner.



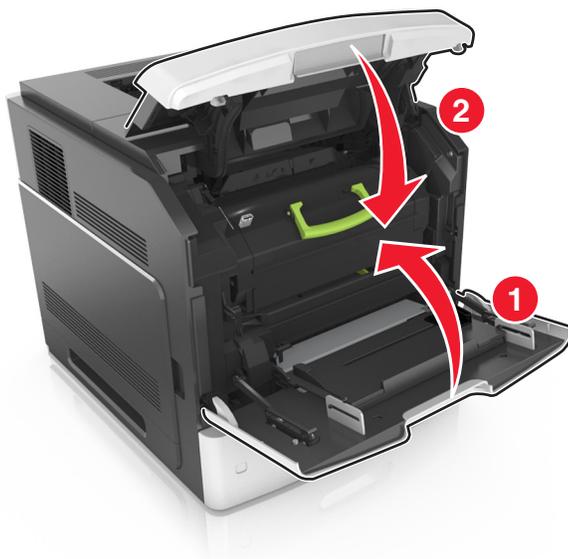
- 4 Insert the toner cartridge into the printer by aligning the side rails of the cartridge with the arrows on the side rails inside the printer.

**Note:** Make sure the cartridge is fully pushed in.



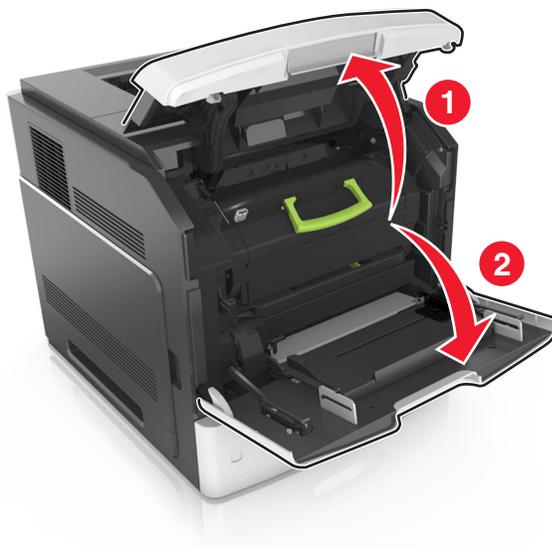
**Warning—Potential Damage:** When replacing a toner cartridge, do not leave the imaging unit exposed to direct light for an extended period of time. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

5 Close the multipurpose feeder door and the front cover.

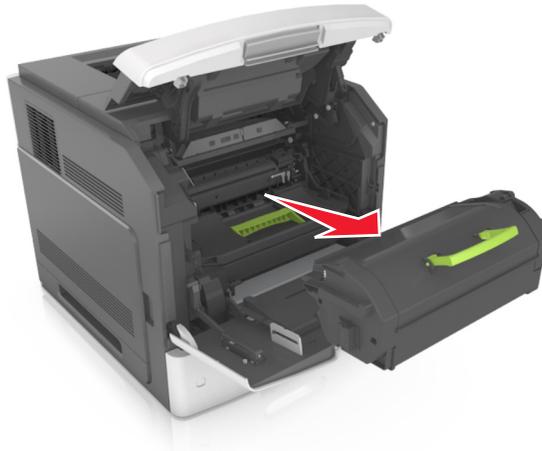


### Replacing the imaging unit

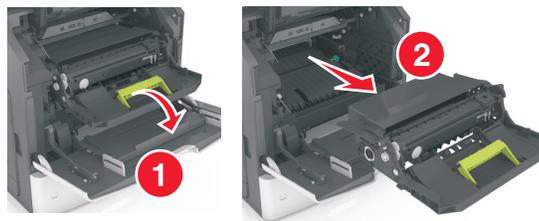
1 Lift the front cover, and then pull down the multipurpose feeder door.



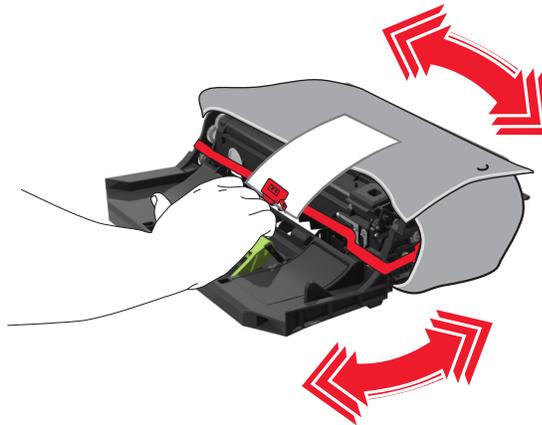
- 2 Pull out the toner cartridge from the printer using the handle.



- 3 Lift the green handle, and then pull out the imaging unit from the printer.



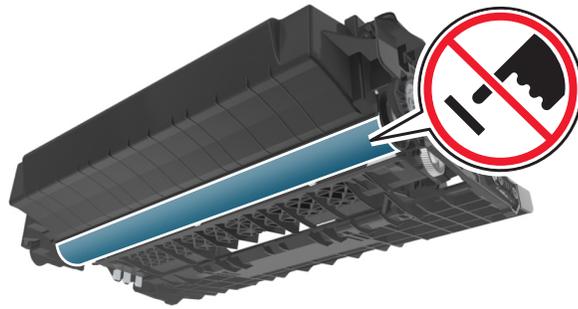
- 4 Unpack the new imaging unit, and then shake it.



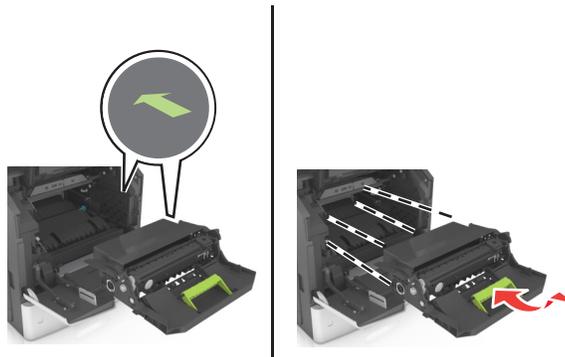
- 5 Remove all packing material from the imaging unit.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

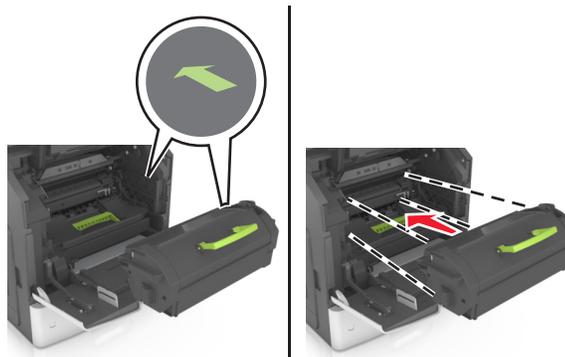
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.



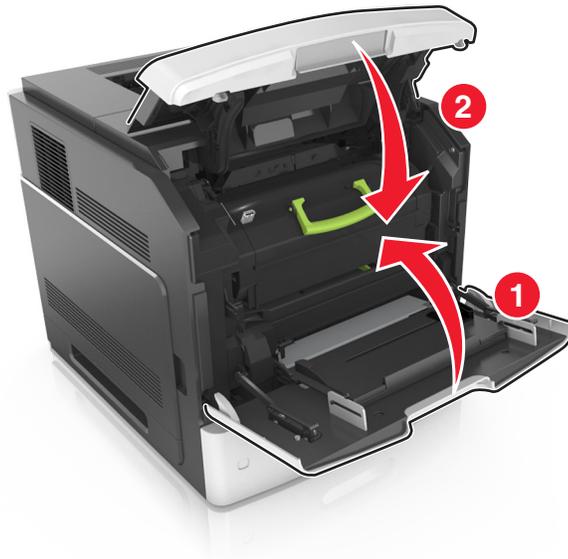
**6** Insert the imaging unit into the printer by aligning the arrows on the side rails of the imaging unit with the arrows on the side rails inside the printer.



**7** Insert the toner cartridge into the printer by aligning the side rails of the cartridge with the arrows on the side rails inside the printer.

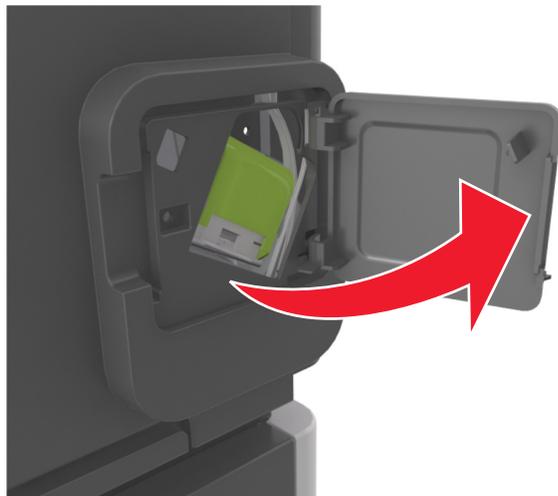


- 8 Close the multipurpose feeder door and the front cover.

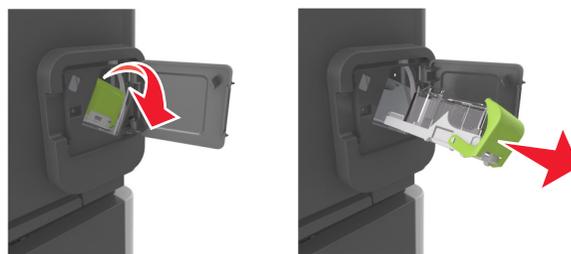


## Replacing a staple cartridge

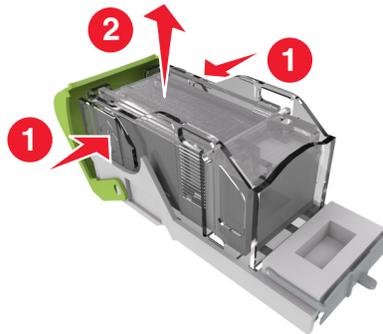
- 1 Open the stapler door.



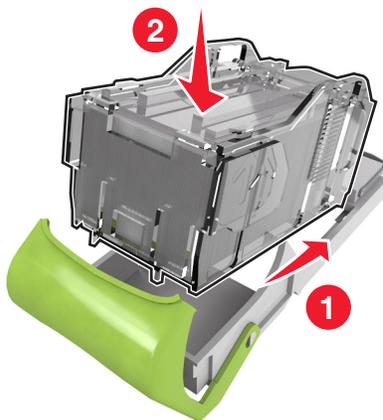
- 2 Pull down the latch of the staple cartridge holder, and then pull the holder out of the finisher.



- 3 Squeeze both sides of the empty staple case with your fingers, and then remove the staple case from the cartridge.



- 4 Insert the front side of the new staple case into the staple cartridge, and then push the rear side into the cartridge.



- 5 Push the staple cartridge into the finisher until it *clicks* into place.
- 6 Close the stapler door.

## Cleaning printer parts

### Cleaning the printer

**Note:** You may need to perform this task after every few months.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Damage to the printer caused by improper handling is not covered by the printer warranty.

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the electrical outlet.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

- 2 Remove paper from the standard bin and multipurpose feeder.
- 3 Remove any dust, lint, and pieces of paper around the printer using a soft brush or vacuum.

- 4 Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water, and use it to wipe the outside of the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not use household cleaners or detergents to prevent damage to the exterior of the printer.

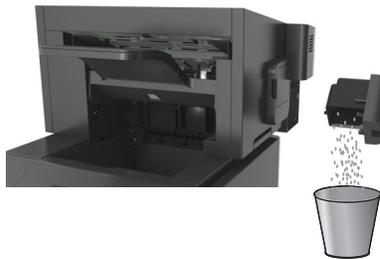
- 5 Make sure all areas of the printer are dry before sending a new print job.

## Emptying the hole punch box

- 1 Pull out the hole punch box.



- 2 Empty the container.



- 3 Insert the emptied hole punch box back into the finisher until it *clicks* into place.



## Moving the printer

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

### Before moving the printer

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer.
- If two or more optional finishers are installed, then remove the finishers individually from the printer.

#### Notes:

- Make sure to remove the topmost finisher first.

- To remove the finisher, hold the finisher on both sides, and then lift the latches to unlock the finisher.



- If the printer does not have a caster base but is configured with optional trays, then remove the trays.

**Note:** Slide the latch on the right side of the optional tray toward the front of the tray until it *clicks* into place.



- Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it.
- Make sure your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Make sure there is adequate clearance around the printer.
- Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

## Moving the printer to another location

The printer and its hardware options can be safely moved to another location by following these precautions:

- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Any cart used to move the hardware options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the hardware options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

## Shipping the printer

When shipping the printer, use the original packaging or call the place of purchase for a relocation kit.

## Clearing jams

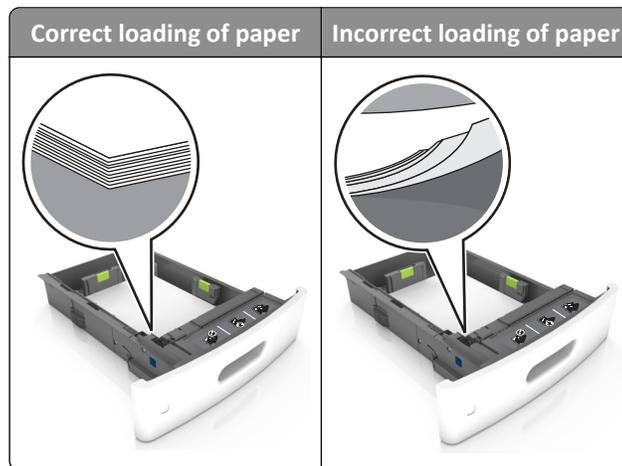
Carefully select paper and specialty media and load them properly to avoid most jams. If jams occur, then follow the steps outlined in this chapter.

**Note:** Jam Recovery is set to Auto by default. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks.

## Avoiding jams

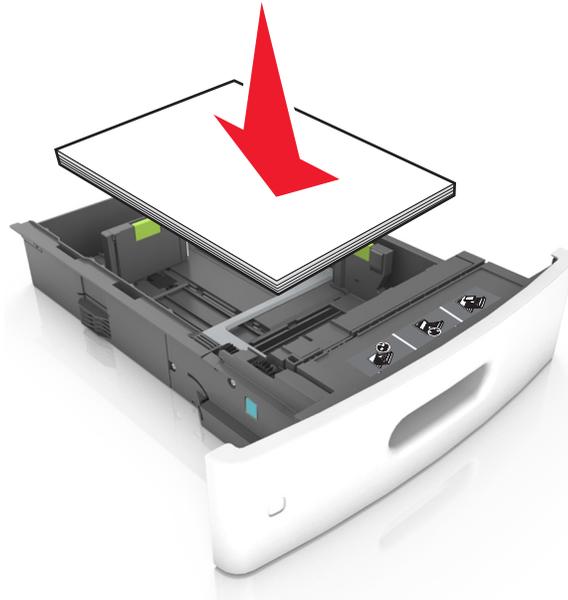
### Load paper properly

- Make sure paper lies flat in the tray.



- Do not remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load a tray while the printer is printing. Load it before printing, or wait for a prompt to load it.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure the stack height is below the maximum paper fill indicator.

- Do not slide the paper into the tray. Load paper as shown in the illustration.



- Make sure the guides in the tray or the multipurpose feeder are properly positioned and are not pressing tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray firmly into the printer after loading paper.
- If you are loading prepunched paper for use with the staple finisher, then make sure the holes on the long edge of the paper are on the right side of the tray. For more information, see the “Loading paper and specialty media” section of the *User's Guide*.

### Allow the paper to enter the optional mailbox bins properly

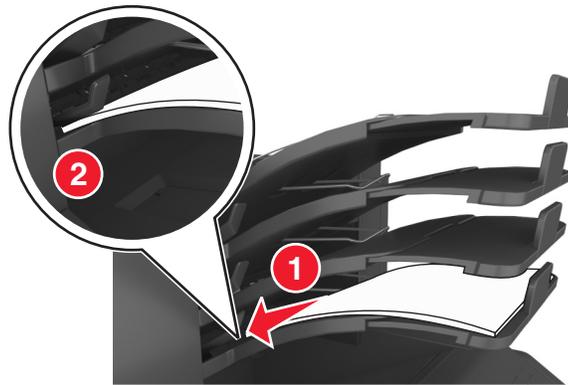
- Make sure to adjust the bin extender so that the paper size indicators match the size of the paper used.



#### Notes:

- If the bin extender is shorter than the size of the paper you are printing on, then the paper causes a jam in the mailbox bin. For example, if you are printing on a legal-size paper and the bin extender is set to letter-size, then a jam occurs.
- If the bin extender is longer than the size of the paper you are printing on, then the edges become uneven and the paper is not stacked properly. For example, if you are printing on a letter-size paper and the bin extender is set to legal-size, then the paper does not stack properly.

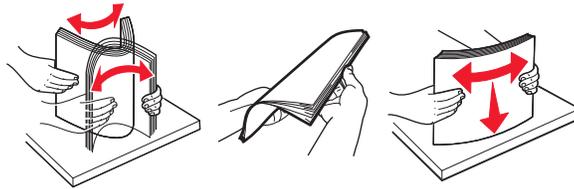
- If paper needs to be returned to the mailbox bin, then insert the paper under the bin arm, and then push the paper all the way back.



**Note:** If the paper is not under the bin arm, then a jam occurs due to an overfilled bin.

### Use recommended paper

- Use only recommended paper or specialty media.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled paper.
- Flex, fan, and straighten paper or specialty media before loading it.



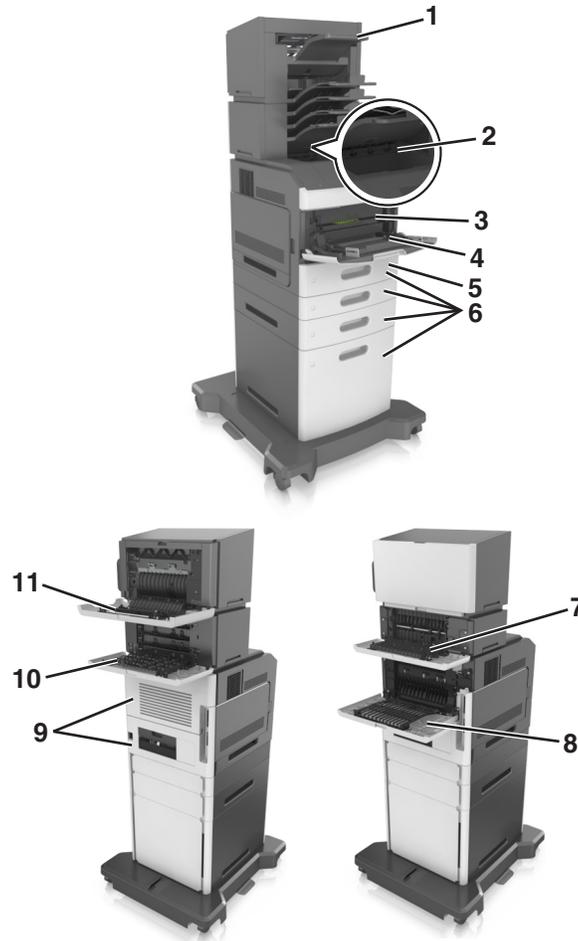
- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same tray.
- Make sure the paper size and type are set correctly on the computer or printer control panel.
- Store paper per manufacturer recommendations.

## Understanding jam messages and locations

When a jam occurs, a message indicating the jam location and information to clear the jam appears on the printer display. Open the doors, covers, and trays indicated on the display to remove the jam.

### Notes:

- When Jam Assist is set to On, **Discarding pages** appears on the display and the printer flushes blank or pages with partial prints to the standard bin after a jammed page is cleared. Check your printed output for blank pages.
- When Jam Recovery is set to On or Auto, the printer reprints jammed pages. However, the Auto setting reprints jammed pages if adequate printer memory is available.



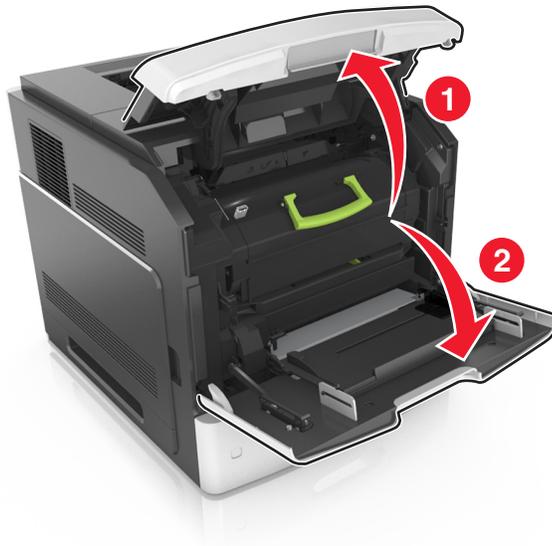
	Jam location	Printer message	What to do
1	Staple finisher	[x]-page jam, remove paper, open stapler door. Leave paper in bin. [455–457]	Remove paper from the stapler bin, open the stapler door, then remove the staple cartridge, and then remove the jammed staples.
2	Standard bin	[x]-page jam, remove standard bin jam. [203]	Remove jammed paper from the standard bin.
3	Inside the printer	[x]-page jam, lift front cover to remove cartridge. [200–201]	Open the front cover and the multipurpose feeder, then remove the toner cartridge and the imaging unit, and then remove the jammed paper.
4	Multipurpose feeder	[x]-page jam, clear manual feeder. [250]	Remove all paper from the multipurpose feeder, and then remove the jammed paper.
5	Duplex area	[x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [235–239]	Pull out tray 1 completely, then push down the front duplex flap, and then remove the jammed paper.
6	Trays	[x]-page jam, open tray [x]. [24x]	Pull out the indicated tray, and then remove the jammed paper.
7	Output expander	[x]-page jam, remove paper, open expander rear door. Leave paper in bin. [41y.xx]	Open the rear door of the output expander, and then remove the jammed paper.
8	Upper rear door	[x]-page jam, open upper rear door. [202]	Open the rear door of the printer, and then remove the jammed paper.

	Jam location	Printer message	What to do
9	Upper door and rear duplex area	[x]-page jam, open upper and lower rear door. [231–234]	Open the rear door of the printer and the rear duplex area, and then remove the jammed paper.
10	Mailbox	[x]-page jam, remove paper, open mailbox rear door. Leave paper in bin. [43y.xx]	Open the rear door of the mailbox, and then remove the jammed paper.
11	Staple finisher rear door	[x]-page jam, remove paper, open finisher rear door. Leave paper in bin. [451]	Open the rear door of the staple finisher, and then remove the jammed paper.

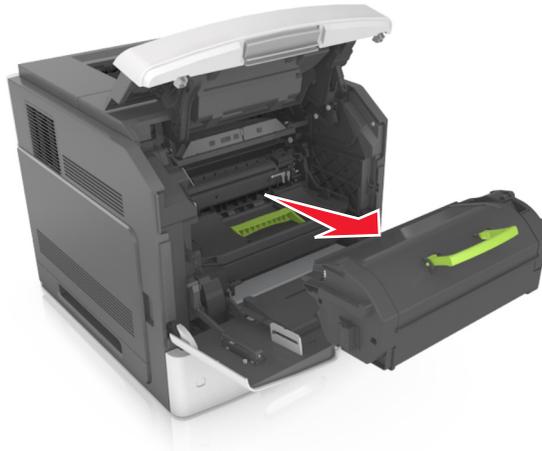
## [x]-page jam, lift front cover to remove cartridge. [200–201]

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

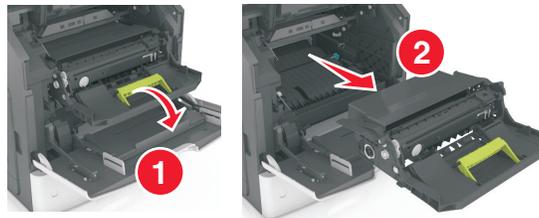
- 1 Lift the front cover, and then pull down the multipurpose feeder door.



- 2 Lift the green handle, and then pull the toner cartridge out of the printer.



- 3 Place the cartridge aside.
- 4 Lift the green handle, and then pull the imaging unit out of the printer.

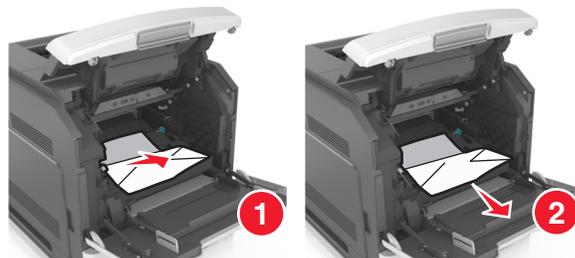


- 5 Place the imaging unit aside on a flat, smooth surface.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

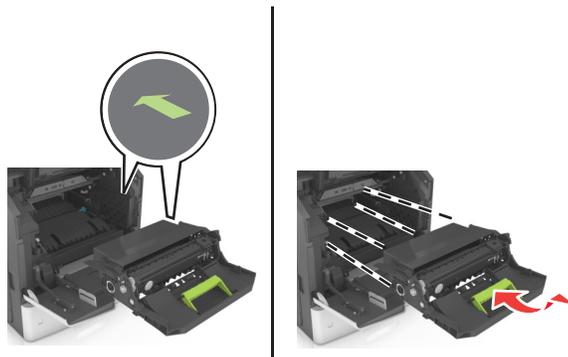
- 6 Pull the jammed paper gently to the right, and then remove it from the printer.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



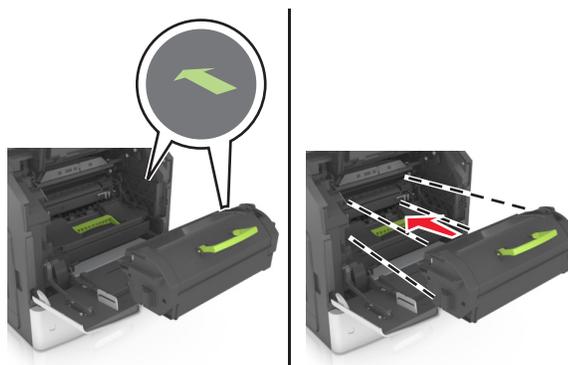
**Warning—Potential Damage:** The jammed paper may be covered with toner, which can stain garments and skin.

7 Install the imaging unit.



**Note:** Use the arrows on the side of the printer as a guide.

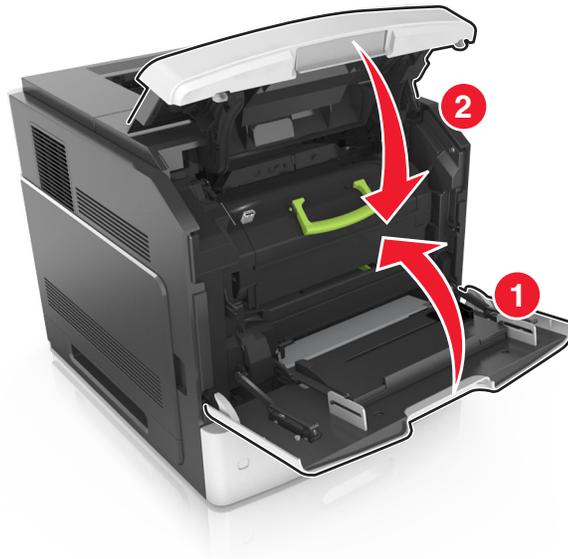
8 Insert the cartridge into the printer, and then push the green handle back into place.



**Notes:**

- Align the arrows on the guides of the toner cartridge with the arrows in the printer.
- Make sure the cartridge is fully pushed in.

- 9 Close the multipurpose feeder door and the front cover.



- 10 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

## [x]-page jam, open upper rear door. [202]

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

- 1 Pull down the rear door.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



3 Close the rear door.

4 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

## [x]-page jam, open upper and lower rear door. [231–234]

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

1 Pull down the rear door.



2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



3 Close the rear door.

4 Push the back of the standard tray.



5 Press down the rear duplex flap, then firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull the paper out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



6 Insert the standard tray.

7 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

## [x]-page jam, remove standard bin jam. [203]

1 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

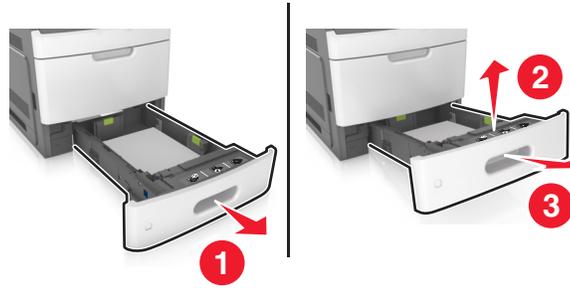


2 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

## [x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [235–239]

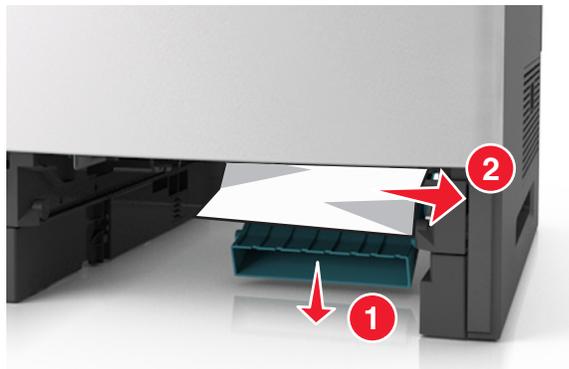
1 Pull out the tray completely.

**Note:** Lift the tray slightly, and then pull it out.



- 2 Push down the front duplex flap, then firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull the paper to the right and out of the printer.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Insert the tray.
- 4 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

## [x]-page jam, open tray [x]. [24x]

- 1 Check which tray is indicated on the printer display, and then pull the tray.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

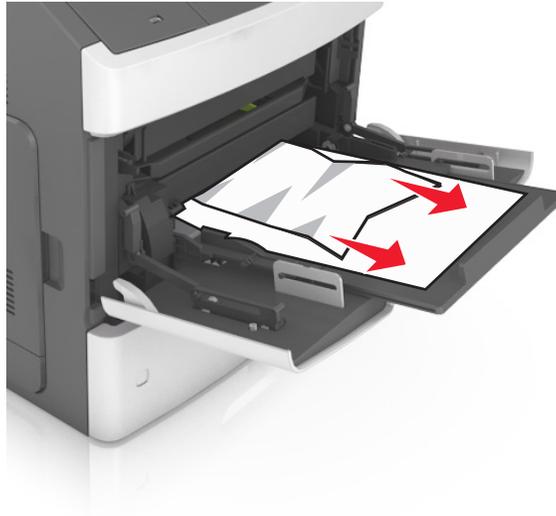


- 3 Insert the tray.
- 4 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

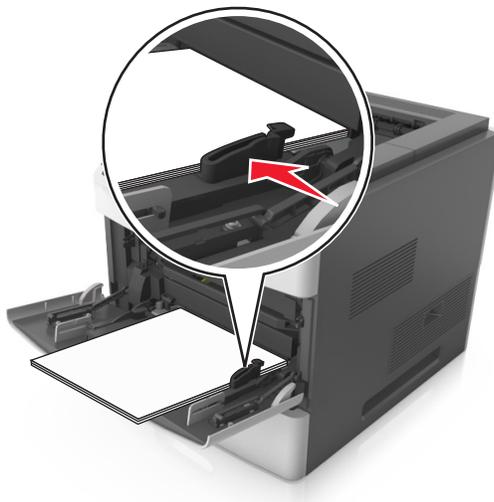
## [x]-page jam, clear manual feeder [250]

- 1 From the multipurpose feeder, firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 2 Flex the sheets of paper back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.
- 3 Reload paper into the multipurpose feeder.
- 4 Slide the paper guide until it lightly rests against the edge of the paper.

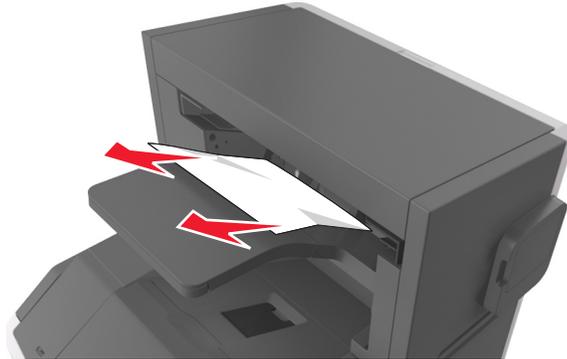


- 5 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

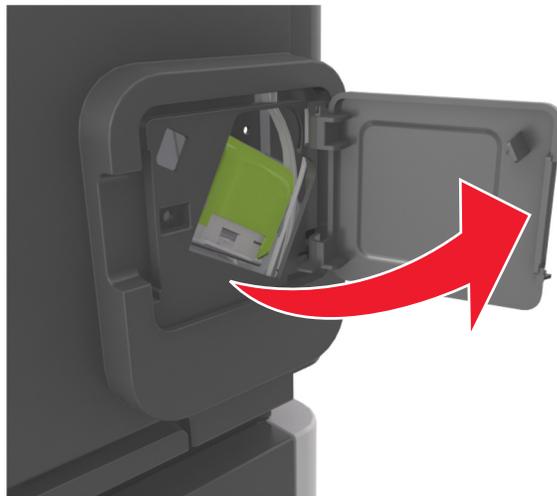
## [x]-page jam, remove paper, open stapler door. Leave paper in bin. [455–457]

- 1 From the stapler bin, firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

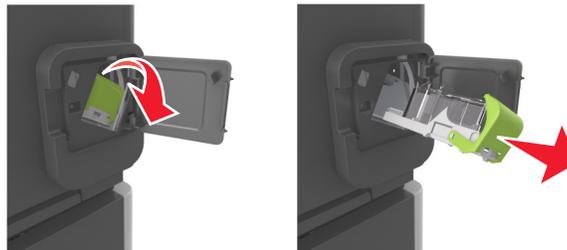
**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



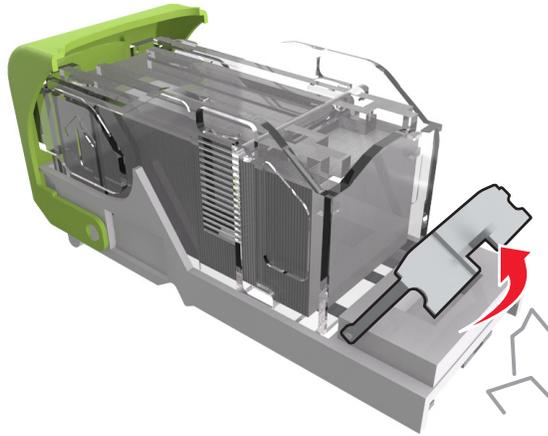
- 2 Open the stapler door.



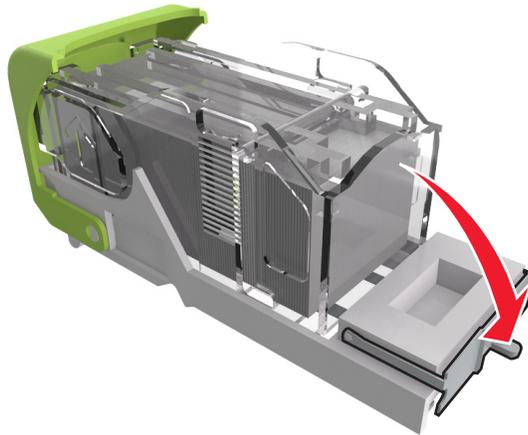
- 3 Pull down the latch of the staple cartridge holder, and then pull the holder out of the printer.



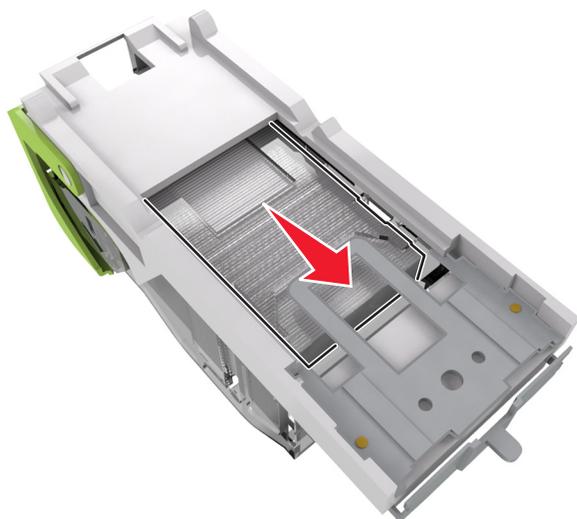
- 4 Use the metal tab to lift the staple guard, and then remove any loose staples.



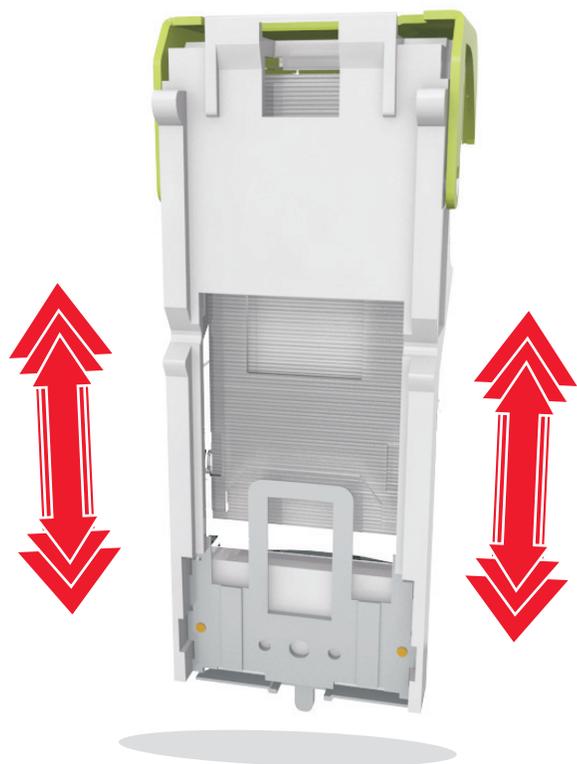
- 5 Press down the staple guard until it *clicks* into place.



- 6 Press the staples against the metal bracket.



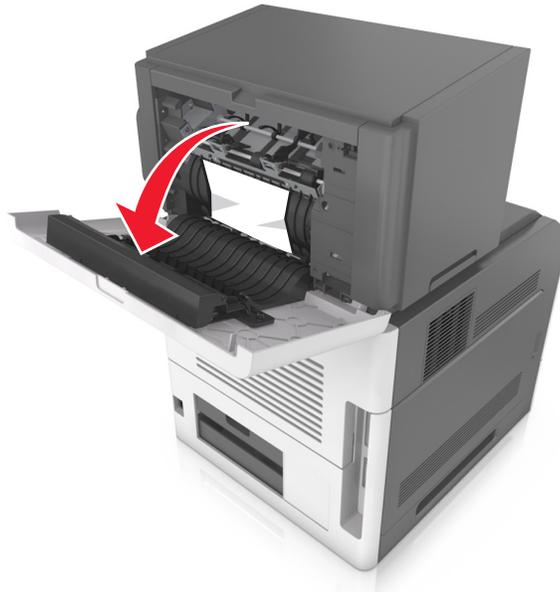
**Note:** If the staples are at the rear of the cartridge, then shake the cartridge downward to bring the staples near the metal bracket.



- 7 Push the cartridge holder firmly back into the stapler unit until the cartridge holder *clicks* into place.
- 8 Close the stapler door.
- 9 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

## [x]-page jam, remove paper, open finisher rear door. Leave paper in bin. [451]

- 1 Open the rear staple finisher door.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Close the staple finisher door.
- 4 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

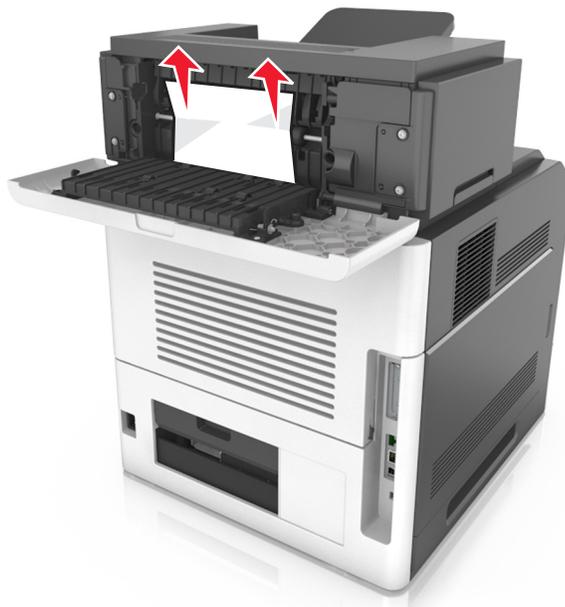
## [x]-page jam, remove paper, open expander rear door. Leave paper in bin. [41y.xx]

- 1 Open the rear output expander door.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

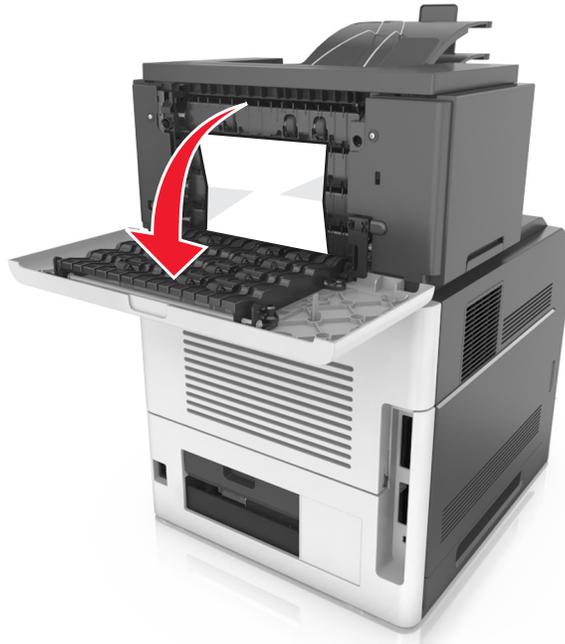
**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Close the rear output expander door.
- 4 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

## [x]-page jam, remove paper, open mailbox rear door. Leave paper in bin. [43y.xx]

- 1 Open the rear mailbox door.



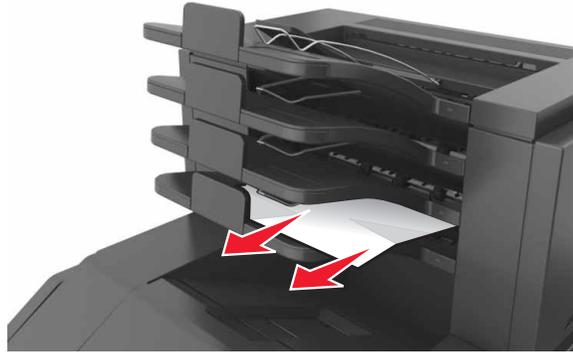
- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



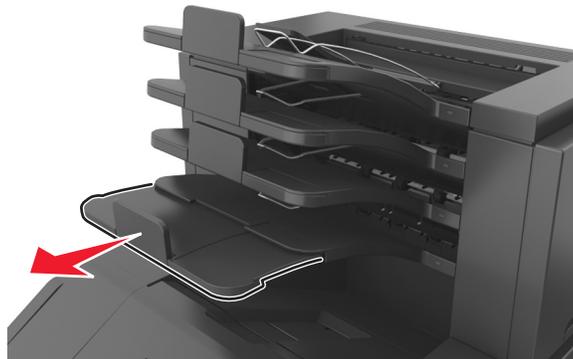
- 3 Close the rear mailbox door.

- 4 If the jam is in the mailbox bin, then firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.



**Notes:**

- Make sure all paper fragments are removed.
- When using A4-, Folio-, or legal-size paper, make sure to adjust the bin extender so that the paper enters the bin properly.



- 5 Touch  or **Done** to clear the message and continue printing.

# Troubleshooting

## Understanding the printer messages

### Cartridge low [88.xy]

You may need to order a toner cartridge. If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

### Cartridge nearly low [88.xy]

If necessary, touch **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing.

### Cartridge very low, [x] estimated pages remain [88.xy]

You may need to replace the toner cartridge very soon. For more information, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

### Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct size and type of paper in the tray, then specify the paper size and type in the Paper menu on the printer control panel, and then touch **Finished changing paper**.
- Touch **Reset active bin** to reset the active tray for a linked set of trays.
- Cancel the print job.

### Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct size and type of paper in the tray, then specify the paper size and type in the Paper menu on the printer control panel, and then touch **Finished changing paper**.
- Touch **Reset active bin** to reset the active tray for a linked set of trays.
- Cancel the print job.

## Change [paper source] to [paper size] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct size and type of paper in the tray, then specify the paper size and type in the Paper menu on the printer control panel, and then touch **Finished changing paper**.
- Touch **Reset active bin** to reset the active tray for a linked set of trays.
- Cancel the print job.

## Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct size and type of paper in the tray, then specify the paper size and type in the Paper menu on the printer control panel, and then touch **Finished changing paper**.
- Touch **Reset active bin** to reset the active tray for a linked set of trays.
- Cancel the print job.

## Check tray [x] connection

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn off the printer, and then turn it back on.

If the error occurs a second time, then:

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- 3 Remove the indicated tray.
- 4 Reattach the tray.
- 5 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 6 Turn the printer back on.

If the error occurs again, then:

- 1 Turn off the printer.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
  - 3 Remove the tray.
  - 4 Contact customer support.
- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message and resume the job.

## Close door or insert cartridge

The toner cartridge is missing or not installed properly. Insert the cartridge, and then close all doors and covers.

## Close rear door

Close the rear door of the printer.

## Complex page, some data may not have printed [39]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to ignore the message and continue printing.
- Cancel current print job.
- Install additional printer memory.

## Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored [57]

Held jobs are invalidated because of the following possible changes in the printer:

- The printer firmware has been updated.
- The tray for the print job has been removed.
- The print job is sent from a flash drive that is no longer attached to the USB port.
- The printer hard disk contains print jobs that were stored when the hard disk was installed in a different printer model.

From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## Defective flash detected [51]

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace the defective flash memory card.
- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to ignore the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

## Disk full [62]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue processing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the printer hard disk.
- Install a printer hard disk with larger capacity.

## Disk must be formatted for use in this device

From the printer control panel, select **Format disk** to format the printer hard disk and clear the message.

**Note:** Formatting deletes all the files stored in the printer hard disk.

## Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space.

Try one or more of the following:

- Select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the printer hard disk.
- Install a hard disk with higher capacity.

## Empty the hole punch box

Try one or more of the following:

- Empty the hole punch box.
- Select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the print job.

## Error reading USB drive. Remove USB.

An unsupported USB device is inserted. Remove the USB device, and then insert a supported one.

## Error reading USB hub. Remove hub.

An unsupported USB hub has been inserted. Remove the USB hub, and then install a supported one.

## Imaging unit low [84.xy]

You may need to order an imaging unit. If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Imaging unit nearly low [84.xy]

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Imaging unit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [84.xy]

You may need to replace the imaging unit very soon. For more information, see the "Replacing supplies" section of the *User's Guide*.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Incompatible output bin [x] [59]

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the indicated bin.
- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing without using the indicated bin.

## Incompatible tray [x] [59]

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the indicated tray.
- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing without using the indicated tray.

## Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34]

**Note:** The paper source can be a tray or a feeder.

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct size of paper in the paper source.
- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message and print using a different paper source. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Check the length and width guides of the paper source and make sure the paper is loaded properly.
- Make sure the correct paper size and type are specified in the Printing Preferences or in the Print dialog.
- Make sure the paper size and type are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel.
- Make sure that the paper size is correctly set. For example, if Multipurpose Feeder Size or MP Feeder Size is set to Universal, then make sure the paper is large enough for the data being printed.
- Cancel the print job.

## Insert hole punch box

Insert the hole punch box into the finisher, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## Insert staple cartridge

Try one or more of the following:

- Insert a staple cartridge. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.
- Select **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the staple finisher. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Insert Tray [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Insert the specified tray into the printer.
- Cancel the print job.
- Reset the active bin for a linked set of bins by selecting **Reset active bin** on the printer control panel.

## Install bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified bin:
  - 1 Turn off the printer.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
  - 3 Install the specified bin.
  - 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 5 Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.
- Reset active bin

## Install Tray [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified tray:
  - 1 Turn off the printer.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
  - 3 Install the specified tray.
  - 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 5 Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.
- Reset the active bin.

## Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to stop the defragmentation and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data in the printer memory.
- Install additional printer memory.

## Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37]

From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Delete other held jobs to free up additional printer memory.

## Insufficient memory to collate job [37]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to print the part of the job already stored and begin collating the rest of the print job.
- Cancel the current print job.

## Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35]

Install additional printer memory or touch **Continue** to disable Resource Save, clear the message, and continue printing.

## Load [paper source] with [custom string] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- To use the tray that has the correct size or type of paper, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel.

For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the printer finds a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load [paper source] with [custom type name] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- To use the tray that has the correct size or type of paper, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel.

For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the printer finds a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load [paper source] with [paper size] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size of paper.
- To use the tray or feeder that has the correct size of paper, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the printer finds a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- To use the tray or feeder that has the correct size and type of paper, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

**Note:** If the printer finds a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray that has the correct size and type of paper, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load manual feeder with [custom string] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Continue** or press  to clear the message and continue printing.

**Note:** If no paper is loaded in the feeder when **Continue** or  is selected, then the printer automatically overrides the request, and then prints from an automatically selected tray.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load manual feeder with [custom type name] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the multipurpose feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Continue** or press  to clear the message and continue printing.

**Note:** If no paper is loaded in the feeder when **Continue** or  is selected, then the printer manually overrides the request, and then prints from an automatically selected tray.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load manual feeder with [paper size] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the multipurpose feeder with the correct size of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Continue** or press  to clear the message and continue printing.

**Note:** If no paper is loaded in the feeder when **Continue** or  is selected, then the printer manually overrides the request, and then prints from an automatically selected tray.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load manual feeder with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the multipurpose feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Continue** or press  to clear the message and continue printing.

**Note:** If no paper is loaded in the feeder when **Continue** or  is selected, then the printer manually overrides the request, and then prints from an automatically selected tray.

- Cancel the current job.

## Load staples

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace or insert the specified staple cartridge in the finisher.
- Select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the print job.

## Maintenance kit low [80.xy]

You may need to order a maintenance kit. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact customer support, and then report the message.

If necessary, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy]

For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact customer support, and then report the message.

If necessary, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Maintenance kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [80.xy]

You may need to replace the maintenance kit very soon. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact customer support, and then report the message.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Memory full [38]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Cancel job** to clear the message.
- Install additional printer memory.

## Network [x] software error [54]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- Update the network firmware in the printer or print server. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

## Non-Lexmark [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy]

**Note:** The supply type can be toner cartridge, imaging unit, or fuser.

The printer has detected a non-Lexmark supply or part installed in the printer.

Your Lexmark printer is designed to function best with genuine Lexmark supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components.

All life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark supplies and parts, and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Lexmark printer or associated components.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty.

To accept any and all of these risks, and to proceed with the use of non-genuine supplies or parts in your printer, touch and hold  and the # on the printer control panel simultaneously for 15 seconds to clear the message and continue printing.

If you do not want to accept these risks, then remove the third-party supply or part from your printer, and then install a genuine Lexmark supply or part.

**Note:** For the list of supported supplies, see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User's Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the flash memory.
- Install a flash memory card with larger capacity.

**Note:** Downloaded fonts and macros not previously stored in the flash memory are deleted.

## Paper changes needed

Try one or more of the following:

- Select **Use current supplies** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing.

For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

- Cancel the current print job.

## Parallel port [x] disabled [56]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Enable the parallel port. From the printer control panel, navigate to:  
**Network/Ports > Parallel [x] > Parallel Buffer > Auto**

**Note:** The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.

## Printer had to restart. Last job may be incomplete.

From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

For more information, visit <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact customer support.

## Reattach bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn off the printer, and then turn it back on.
- Reattach the indicated bin.
  - 1 Turn off the printer.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
  - 3 Remove the indicated bin.
  - 4 Reattach the bin.
  - 5 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 6 Turn the printer back on.
- Remove the indicated bin:
  - 1 Turn off the printer.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
  - 3 Remove the indicated bin.
  - 4 Contact customer support at <http://support.lexmark.com> or your service representative.
- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the specified bin.

## Reattach bins [x] – [y]

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn off the printer, and then turn it back on.
- Reattach the indicated bins:
  - 1 Turn off the printer.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
  - 3 Remove the indicated bins.
  - 4 Reattach the bins.
  - 5 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 6 Turn the printer back on.
- Remove the indicated bins:
  - 1 Turn off the printer.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
  - 3 Remove the indicated bins.
  - 4 Contact customer support at <http://support.lexmark.com> or your service representative.

From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the indicated bins.

## Reinstall missing or unresponsive cartridge [31.xy]

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the toner cartridge is missing. If missing, install the toner cartridge.  
For information on installing the cartridge, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.
- If the toner cartridge is installed, then remove the unresponsive toner cartridge, and then reinstall it.  
**Note:** If the message appears after reinstalling the supply, then the cartridge is defective. Replace the toner cartridge.

## Reinstall missing or unresponsive fuser [31.xy]

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the unresponsive fuser, and then reinstall it.  
**Note:** If the message appears after reinstalling the supply, then the fuser is defective. Replace the fuser.
- Install the missing fuser.  
For more information on installing the fuser, see the instruction sheet that came with the part.

## Reinstall missing or unresponsive imaging unit [31.xy]

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the imaging unit is missing. If missing, install the imaging unit.  
For information on installing the imaging unit, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.
- If the imaging unit is installed, then remove the unresponsive imaging unit, and then reinstall it.

**Note:** If the message appears after reinstalling the supply, then the imaging unit is defective. Replace the imaging unit.

## Remove defective disk [61]

Remove and replace the defective printer hard disk.

## Remove packaging material, [area name]

- 1 Remove any remaining packaging material from the specified location.
- 2 Select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Remove paper from all bins

Bins have reached their capacity. Remove paper from all bins to clear the message and continue printing.

If removing the paper does not clear the message, then select **Continue** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Remove paper from bin [x]

Remove paper from the specified bin. The printer automatically detects paper removal and resumes printing.

If removing the paper does not clear the message, then select **Continue** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Remove paper from [linked set bin name]

Remove paper from the specified bin. The printer automatically detects paper removal and resumes printing.

If removing the paper does not clear the message, then select **Continue** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

## Remove paper from standard output bin

Remove the paper stack from the standard bin.

### Replace cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy]

Replace the toner cartridge to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply or see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

**Note:** If you do not have a replacement cartridge, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

### Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy]

Install a toner cartridge that matches the region number of the printer. x indicates the value of the printer region. y indicates the value of the cartridge region. x and y can have the following values:

#### List of printer and toner cartridge regions

Region number	Region
0	Global
1	United States, Canada
2	European Economic Area (EEA), Switzerland
3	Asia Pacific, Australia, New Zealand
4	Latin America
5	Africa, Middle East, rest of Europe
9	Invalid

**Notes:**

- The x and y values are the .xy of the error code shown on the printer control panel.
- The x and y values must match for printing to continue.

### Replace imaging unit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy]

Replace the imaging unit to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply or see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

**Note:** If you do not have a replacement imaging unit, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

### Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy]

The printer is scheduled for maintenance. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact your service representative, and then report the message.

### Replace unsupported cartridge [32.xy]

Remove the toner cartridge, and then install a supported one to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply or see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

**Note:** If you do not have a replacement cartridge, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Replace unsupported fuser [32.xy]

Remove the fuser, and then install a supported one. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the part.

## Replace unsupported imaging unit [32.xy]

Remove the imaging unit, and then install a supported one to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply or see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

**Note:** If you do not have a replacement imaging unit, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Restore held jobs?

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Restore** to restore all held jobs stored in the printer hard disk.
- From the printer control panel, touch **Do not restore** if you do not want to restore any of the print jobs.

## Serial option [x] error [54]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Check that the serial cable is properly connected and is the correct one for the serial port.
- Check that the serial interface parameters (protocol, baud, parity, and data bits) are set correctly on the printer and computer.
- Turn off the printer, and then turn it back on.

## Serial port [x] disabled [56]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message.  
The printer discards any data received through the specified serial port.
- Make sure Serial Buffer is not set to Disabled.
- From the printer control panel, set Serial Buffer to Auto in the Serial [x] menu.

## Some held jobs were not restored

From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to delete the indicated job.

**Note:** Held jobs that are not restored remain in the printer hard disk and are inaccessible.

## Standard network software error [54]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Turn off the printer and then turn it back on.
- Update the network firmware in the printer or print server. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

## Standard USB port disabled [56]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Enable the USB port. From the printer control panel, navigate to:  
**Network/Ports > USB Buffer > Auto**

**Note:** The printer discards any data received through the USB port.

## Supply needed to complete job

Do either of the following:

- Install the missing supply to complete the job.
- Cancel the current job.

## Too many bins attached [58]

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- 3 Remove the extra bins.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## Too many disks installed [58]

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- 3 Remove the extra printer hard disks.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## Too many flash options installed [58]

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- 3 Remove the extra flash memory.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## Too many trays attached [58]

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- 3 Remove the extra trays.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## Tray [x] paper size unsupported

The paper size in the specified tray is unsupported. Replace it with a supported paper size.

## Unformatted flash detected [53]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to stop the defragmentation and continue printing.
- Format the flash memory.

**Note:** If the error message remains, then the flash memory may be defective and needs to be replaced.

## Unsupported disk

Remove the unsupported printer hard disk, and then insert a supported one.

## Unsupported option in slot [x] [55]

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the unsupported option card from the printer controller board, and then replace it with a supported card.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## USB port [x] disabled [56]

From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message.

### Notes:

- The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

## Solving printer problems

- “Printer does not respond” on page 252
- “Printing problems” on page 254
- “Hardware and internal option problems” on page 261
- “Paper feed problems” on page 265
- “Print quality problems” on page 267

## Printer does not respond

### The printer is not responding

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Make sure the printer is turned on.</p> <p>Is the printer turned on?</p>	Go to step 2.	Turn on the printer.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check if the printer is in Sleep mode or Hibernate mode.</p> <p>Is the printer in Sleep mode or Hibernate mode?</p>	Press the Sleep button to wake the printer from Sleep mode or Hibernate mode.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b> Check if one end of the power cord is plugged into the printer and the other to a properly grounded electrical outlet.</p> <p>Is the power cord plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet?</p>	Go to step 4.	Plug one end of the power cord into the printer and the other to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
<p><b>Step 4</b> Check other electrical equipment plugged into the electrical outlet.</p> <p>Does other electrical equipment work?</p>	Unplug the other electrical equipment, and then turn on the printer. If the printer does not work, then reconnect the other electrical equipment.	Go to step 5.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 5</b> Check if the cables connecting the printer and the computer are inserted in the correct ports.</p> <p>Are the cables inserted in the correct ports?</p>	Go to step 6.	<p>Make sure to match the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer</li> <li>• The appropriate Ethernet cable with the Ethernet port</li> </ul>
<p><b>Step 6</b> Make sure the electrical outlet is not turned off by a switch or breaker.</p> <p>Is the electrical outlet turned off by a switch or breaker?</p>	Turn on the switch or reset the breaker.	Go to step 7.
<p><b>Step 7</b> Check if the printer is plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords.</p> <p>Is the printer plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords?</p>	Connect the printer power cord directly to a properly grounded electrical outlet.	Go to step 8.
<p><b>Step 8</b> Check if one end of the printer cable is plugged into a port on the printer and the other to the computer, print server, option, or other network device.</p> <p>Is the printer cable securely attached to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device?</p>	Go to step 9.	Connect the printer cable securely to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device.
<p><b>Step 9</b> Make sure to install all hardware options properly and remove any packing material.</p> <p>Are all hardware options properly installed and all packing material removed?</p>	Go to step 10.	Turn off the printer, remove all packing materials, then reinstall the hardware options, and then turn on the printer.
<p><b>Step 10</b> Check if you have selected the correct port settings in the printer driver.</p> <p>Are the port settings correct?</p>	Go to step 11.	Use correct printer driver settings.
<p><b>Step 11</b> Check the installed printer driver.</p> <p>Is the correct printer driver installed?</p>	Go to step 12.	Install the correct printer driver.
<p><b>Step 12</b> Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p>Is the printer working?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Printer display is blank

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Press the Sleep button on the printer control panel.</p> <p>Does <b>Ready</b> appear on the printer display?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p>Do <b>Please wait</b> and <b>Ready</b> appear on the printer display?</p>	The problem is solved.	Turn off the printer, and then contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Printing problems

#### Confidential and other held jobs do not print

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, open the Held Jobs folder, and then verify that your print job is listed.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">“Printing confidential and other held jobs” on page 73</a> or <a href="#">“Printing confidential and other held jobs” on page 120</a>.</p> <p>Did the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Delete the print job, and then resend it.</li> <li>• If you are printing PDF files, then generate a new file, and then print it again.</li> </ul> <p>Did the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Increase the printer memory. Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Delete some print jobs.</li> <li>• Install additional printer memory.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Envelope seals when printing

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>a</b> Use envelopes that have been stored in a dry environment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Printing on envelopes with high moisture content can seal the flaps.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Does the envelope seal when printing?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Error message about reading the flash drive appears

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Check if the flash drive is inserted into the front USB slot.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The flash drive will not work if it is inserted into the rear USB slot.</p> <p>Is the flash drive inserted into the front USB slot?</p>	Go to step 2.	Insert the flash drive into the front USB slot.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check if the indicator light on the printer control panel is blinking green.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> A green blinking light indicates that the printer is busy.</p> <p>Is the indicator light blinking green?</p>	Wait until the printer is ready, then view the held jobs list, and then print the documents.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check for an error message on the display.</p> <p><b>b</b> Clear the message.</p> <p>Does the error message still appear?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Check if the flash drive is supported.</p> <p>For more information on tested and approved USB flash drives, see <a href="#">“Supported flash drives and file types” on page 72</a> or <a href="#">“Supported flash drives and file types” on page 118</a>.</p> <p>Does the error message still appear?</p>	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p>Check if the USB slot is disabled by the system support person.</p> <p>Does the error message still appear?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Incorrect characters print

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Make sure the printer is not in Hex Trace mode.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If <b>Ready Hex</b> appears on the printer display, then turn off the printer, and then turn it back on to deactivate Hex Trace mode.</p> <p>Is the printer in Hex Trace mode?</p>	Deactivate Hex Trace mode.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, select <b>Standard Network</b> or <b>Network [x]</b>, and then set SmartSwitch to On.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do incorrect characters print?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if you are printing on paper that is supported by the tray.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, set the paper size and type to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, open Printing Preferences or the Print dialog, and then specify the paper type.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the trays are not linked.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Large jobs do not collate

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Finishing menu on the printer control panel, set Collate to (1,2,3) (1,2,3).</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print and collate correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer software, set Collate to (1,2,3) (1,2,3).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Setting Collate to (1,1,1) (2,2,2) in the software overrides the setting in the Finishing menu.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print and collate correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Reduce the complexity of the print job by eliminating the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the job.</p> <p>Did the job print and collate correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Multiple-language PDF files do not print

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the print options for the PDF output are set to embed all fonts.</p> <p><b>b</b> Generate a new PDF file, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the files print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Open the document you want to print in Adobe Acrobat.</p> <p><b>b</b> Click <b>File &gt; Print &gt; Advanced &gt; Print As Image &gt; OK &gt; OK</b> .</p> <p>Do the files print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Print job takes longer than expected

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Change the environmental settings of the printer.</p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, navigate to: <b>Settings &gt; General Settings</b></p> <p><b>b</b> Select <b>Eco-Mode</b> or <b>Quiet Mode</b>, and then select <b>Off</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Disabling Eco-Mode or Quiet Mode may increase the consumption of energy or supplies, or both.</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Reduce the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the print job, and then resend the job</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b> <b>a</b> Remove held jobs stored in the printer memory. <b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
<p><b>Step 4</b> <b>a</b> Disable the Page Protect feature. From the printer control panel, navigate to: <b>Settings &gt; General Settings &gt; Print Recovery &gt; Page Protect &gt; Off</b></p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.
<p><b>Step 5</b> Install additional printer memory, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Print jobs do not print

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> <b>a</b> From the document you are trying to print, open the Print dialog and check if you have selected the correct printer. <b>Note:</b> If the printer is not the default printer, then you must select the printer for each document that you want to print.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the printer is plugged in and turned on, and if <b>Ready</b> appears on the printer display.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>If an error message appears on the printer display, then clear the message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The printer continues to print after clearing the message.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the ports (USB, serial, or Ethernet) are working and if the cables are securely connected to the computer and the printer.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 6.
<p><b>Step 6</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Remove, and then reinstall the printer software. For more information, see <a href="#">“Installing the printer” on page 33</a>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The printer software is available at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a>.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the jobs print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

## Printing slows down

**Notes:**

- When printing using narrow paper, the printer prints at a reduced speed to prevent damage to the fuser.
- The printer speed may be reduced when printing for long periods of time, or printing at elevated temperatures.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Make sure the size of the paper loaded in the tray matches the fuser type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Use a 110-volt fuser for printing on letter-size paper and a 220-volt fuser for printing on A4-size paper.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Does the print speed increase?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the fuser. For more information on installing the fuser, see the instruction sheet that came with the part.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Does the print speed increase?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Tray linking does not work

**Notes:**

- The trays can detect paper length.
- The multipurpose feeder does not automatically detect the paper size. You must set the size from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Open the trays, and then check if they contain paper of the same size and type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the paper guides are in the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded in each tray.</li> <li>• Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the trays link correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the trays to be linked.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The paper size and type must match for trays to be linked.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the trays link correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Unexpected page breaks occur

Action	Yes	No
<p>Increase the printing timeout.</p> <p><b>a</b> From the home screen, navigate to:</p> <p> &gt; <b>Settings</b> &gt; <b>General Settings</b> &gt; <b>Timeouts</b></p> <p><b>b</b> Increase the Print Timeout setting, and then touch <b>Submit</b>.</p> <p><b>c</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the file print correctly?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Check the original file for manual page breaks.</p>

### Hardware and internal option problems

#### 2100-sheet tray problems

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Pull out the tray, and then do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure paper lies flat in the tray.</li> <li>• Check for paper jams or misfeeds.</li> <li>• Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray.</li> <li>• Check if the paper guides are aligned against the edges of the paper.</li> <li>• Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator.</li> <li>• Check if you are printing on a recommended paper size and type.</li> <li>• Check if the paper or specialty media meets specifications and is not damaged.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Insert the tray properly.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Press the paper stack down while inserting the tray.</p> <p>Does the tray operate properly?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Turn off the printer, then wait about 10 seconds, and then turn it back on.</p> <p>Does the tray operate properly?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Print a menu settings page, and then check if the tray is listed in the Installed Features list.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the tray is listed in the menu settings page, but paper jams when it enters or exits the tray, then it may not be properly installed.</p> <p>Is the tray listed in the menu settings page?</p>	<p>Go to step 4.</p>	<p>For more information, see the setup sheet that came with the 2100-sheet tray.</p>

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 4</b> Check if the tray is available in the printer driver.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You may need to manually add the tray in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see <a href="#">“Adding available options in the print driver” on page 33.</a></p> <p>Is the tray available in the printer driver?</p>	Go to step 5.	Manually add the tray in the printer driver.
<p><b>Step 5</b> Check if the tray is selected.</p> <p>From the application you are using, select the tray. If you are using Mac OS X version 9, then make sure the printer is set up in Chooser.</p> <p>Does the tray operate properly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support.</a>

### Cannot detect internal option

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer.</p> <p>Does the internal option operate correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b> Check if the internal option is properly installed in the controller board.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Turn off the printer using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.</li> <li><b>b</b> Make sure the internal option is installed in the appropriate connector in the controller board.</li> <li><b>c</b> Connect the power cord to the printer, then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.</li> </ul> <p>Is the internal option properly installed in the controller board?</p>	Go to step 3.	Connect the internal option to the controller board.
<p><b>Step 3</b> Print a menu settings page, and then check to see if the internal option is listed in the Installed Features list.</p> <p>Is the internal option listed in the menu settings page?</p>	Go to step 4.	Reinstall the internal option.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if the internal option is selected. It may be necessary to manually add the internal option in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see <a href="#">“Adding available options in the print driver” on page 33.</a></p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Does the internal option operate correctly?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

### Internal print server does not operate correctly

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Reinstall the internal print server.</p> <p><b>a</b> Remove, and then install the internal print server. For more information, see <a href="#">“Installing an Internal Solutions Port” on page 16.</a></p> <p><b>b</b> Print a menu settings page, and then check if the internal print server is listed in the Installed Features list.</p> <p>Is the internal print server listed in the Installed Features list?</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>	<p>Check if the internal print server is supported by the printer.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> An internal print server from another printer may not work with this printer.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check the cable and the internal print server connection. Use the correct cable, and then check if it is securely connected to the internal print server.</p> <p>Does the internal print server operate correctly?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>

### Tray problems

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Pull out the tray, and then do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check for paper jams or misfeeds.</li> <li>• Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray.</li> <li>• If you are printing on custom-size paper, then make sure that the paper guides rest against the edges of the paper.</li> <li>• Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator.</li> <li>• Make sure paper lies flat in the tray.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Check if the tray closes properly.</p> <p>Is the tray working?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Turn off the printer, then wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the tray working?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Check if the tray is installed and recognized by the printer.</p> <p>Print a menu settings page, and then check if the tray is listed in the Installed Features list.</p> <p>Is the tray listed in the menu settings page?</p>	Go to step 4.	Reinstall the tray. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the tray.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Check if the tray is available in the printer driver.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If necessary, manually add the tray in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see <a href="#">“Adding available options in the print driver” on page 33.</a></p> <p>Is the tray available in the printer driver?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support.</a>

### Internal Solutions Port does not operate correctly

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Make sure the Internal Solutions Port (ISP) is installed.</p> <p><b>a</b> Install the ISP. For more information, see <a href="#">“Installing an Internal Solutions Port” on page 16.</a></p> <p><b>b</b> Print a menu settings page, and then check if the ISP is listed in the Installed Features list.</p> <p>Is the ISP listed in the Installed Features list?</p>	Go to step 2.	<p>Check if you have a supported ISP.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> An ISP from another printer may not work on this printer.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check the cable and the ISP connection.</p> <p><b>a</b> Use the correct cable, and then make sure it is securely connected to the ISP.</p> <p><b>b</b> Check if the ISP solution interface cable is securely connected into the receptacle of the controller board.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The ISP solution interface cable and the receptacle on the controller board are color-coded.</p> <p>Does the Internal Solutions Port operate correctly?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support.</a>

### USB/parallel interface card does not operate correctly

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Make sure the USB or parallel interface card is installed.</p> <p><b>a</b> Install the USB or parallel interface card. For more information, see <a href="#">“Installing an Internal Solutions Port” on page 16.</a></p> <p><b>b</b> Print a menu settings page, and then check if the USB or parallel interface card is listed in the Installed Features list.</p> <p>Is the USB or parallel interface card listed in the Installed Features list?</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>	<p>Check if you have a supported USB or parallel interface card.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> A USB or parallel interface card from another printer may not work on this printer.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check the cable and the USB or parallel interface card connection.</p> <p>Use the correct cable, and then make sure it is securely connected to the USB or parallel interface card.</p> <p>Does the USB or parallel interface card operate correctly?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support.</a></p>

### Paper feed problems

#### Jammed pages are not reprinted

Action	Yes	No
<p>Turn on Jam Recovery.</p> <p><b>a</b> From the home screen, navigate to:</p> <p> &gt; <b>Settings</b> &gt; <b>General Settings</b> &gt; <b>Print Recovery</b></p> <p><b>b</b> From the Jam Recovery menu, touch the arrows to scroll to <b>On</b> or <b>Auto</b>.</p> <p><b>c</b> Touch <b>Submit</b>.</p> <p>Do pages reprint after a jam?</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support.</a></p>

### Paper frequently jams

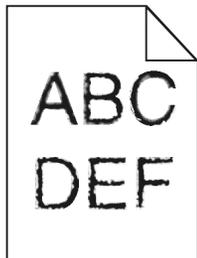
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Pull out the tray, and then do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure paper lies flat in the tray.</li> <li>• Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray.</li> <li>• Check if the paper guides are aligned against the edges of the paper.</li> <li>• Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator.</li> <li>• Check if you are printing on a recommended paper size and type.</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Insert the tray properly.</p> <p>If jam recovery is enabled, then the print jobs will reprint automatically.</p> <p>Do paper jams still occur frequently?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do paper jams still occur frequently?</p>	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Review the tips on avoiding jams. For more information, see <a href="#">“Avoiding jams” on page 214</a>.</p> <p><b>b</b> Follow the recommendations, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do paper jams still occur frequently?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Paper jam message remains after jam is cleared

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>a</b> Touch  or <b>Done</b>.</p> <p><b>b</b> Follow the instructions on the printer display.</p> <p>Does the paper jam message remain?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

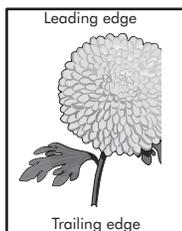
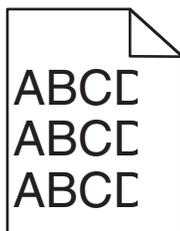
## Print quality problems

### Characters have jagged or uneven edges



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Print a font sample list to check if the fonts you are using are supported by the printer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the printer control panel, navigate to: <b>Menus &gt; Reports &gt; Print Fonts</b></li> <li>Select <b>PCL Fonts</b> or <b>PostScript Fonts</b>.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Are you using fonts that are supported by the printer?</p>	Go to step 2.	Select a font that is supported by the printer.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check if the fonts installed on the computer are supported by the printer.</p> <p>Are the fonts installed on the computer supported by the printer?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Clipped pages or images



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper loaded.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the page or image clipped?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the paper size and type match the paper loaded in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	<p>Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Specify the paper size from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.</li> <li>• Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper size specified in the tray settings.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the page or image clipped?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Remove the toner cartridge.</li> <li>2 Remove the imaging unit.</li> </ol> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3 Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the page or image clipped?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

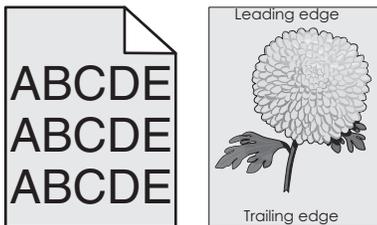
### Compressed images appear on prints

**Note:** Printing on letter-size paper using a 220-volt fuser compresses images.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Make sure the size of the paper loaded in the tray matches the fuser type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Use a 110-volt fuser for printing on letter-size paper and a 220-volt fuser for printing on A4-size paper.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do compressed images still appear?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.

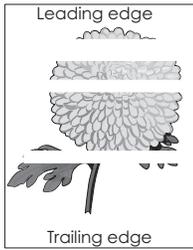
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the fuser. For more information on installing the fuser, see the instruction sheet that came with the part.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do compressed images still appear?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Gray background on prints



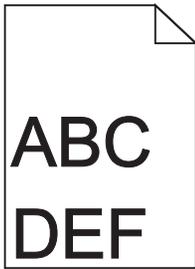
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Quality Menu on the printer control panel, decrease the toner darkness.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 8 is the factory default setting.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the gray background disappear from the prints?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Reinstall the imaging unit and the toner cartridge.</p> <p><b>a</b> Remove the toner cartridge.</p> <p><b>b</b> Remove the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light can cause print quality problems.</p> <p><b>c</b> Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</p> <p><b>d</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the gray background disappear from the prints?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the gray background disappear from the prints?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Horizontal voids appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Make sure your software program is using a correct fill pattern.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do horizontal voids appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Load the specified tray or feeder with a recommended type of paper.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do horizontal voids appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Redistribute the toner in the imaging unit.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</li> <li><b>2</b> Firmly shake the imaging unit.                                     <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> </li> <li><b>3</b> Reinstall the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> </li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do horizontal voids appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do horizontal voids appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Incorrect margins on prints

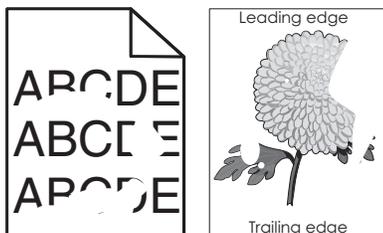


Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Are the margins correct?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper size in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Does the paper size match the paper loaded in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	<p>Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify the paper size from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.</li> <li>Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper size specified in the tray settings.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Are the margins correct?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Paper curl

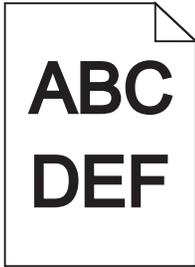
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded.</p> <p>Are the width and length guides positioned correctly?</p>	Go to step 2.	Adjust the width and length guides.
<p><b>Step 2</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the paper type and weight match the type and weight of the paper in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	Specify the paper type and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</li> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the paper still curled?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Remove the paper from the tray, and then turn it over.</li> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the paper still curled?</p>	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Load paper from a fresh package.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the paper still curled?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Print irregularities



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do print irregularities still appear?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the printer settings match the type and weight of the paper loaded in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	Specify the paper size and type from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do print irregularities still appear?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Check if the paper loaded in the tray has texture or rough finishes.</p> <p>Are you printing on textured or rough paper?</p>	From the printer control panel, set the paper texture in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.	Go to step 5.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do print irregularities still appear?</p>	Go to step 6.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 6</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do print irregularities still appear?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> or your service representative.	The problem is solved.

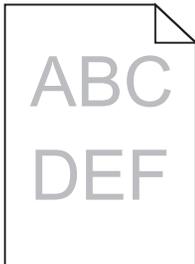
**Print is too dark**



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, reduce the toner darkness.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 8 is the factory default setting.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too dark?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper type, texture and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the tray set to the type, texture, and weight of the paper loaded?</p>	Go to step 3.	<p>Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify the paper type, texture, and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.</li> <li>Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper type, texture and weight specified in the tray settings.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type, texture and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too dark?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p>Check if the paper loaded in the tray has texture or rough finishes.</p> <p>Are you printing on textured or rough paper?</p>	From the printer control panel, change the texture settings in the Paper Texture menu to match the paper you are printing on.	Go to step 5.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too dark?</p>	Go to step 6.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 6</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too dark?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

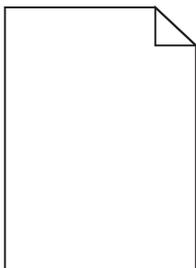
**Print is too light**



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, increase the toner darkness.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 8 is the factory default setting.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Is the tray set to the type, texture, and weight of the paper loaded?</p>	Go to step 3.	Change the paper type, texture, and weight to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type, texture, and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 4</b>                      Make sure that the paper has no texture or rough finishes.</p> <p>Are you printing on textured or rough paper?</p>	<p>From the printer control panel, change the texture settings in the Paper Texture menu to match the paper you are printing on.</p>	<p>Go to step 5.</p>
<p><b>Step 5</b>                      a Load paper from a fresh package.  <b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.                      b Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	<p>Go to step 6.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>
<p><b>Step 6</b>                      a Redistribute the toner in the imaging unit.                      1 Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.                      2 Firmly shake the imaging unit.  <b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.                      3 Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.                      b Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	<p>Go to step 7.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>
<p><b>Step 7</b>                      Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print still too light?</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>

**Printer is printing blank pages**



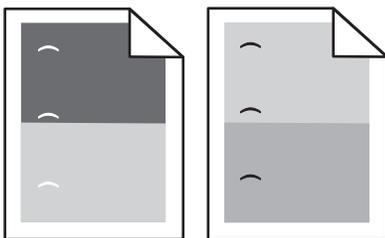
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Check if there is packing material left on the imaging unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</li> <li><b>2</b> Check if the packing material is properly removed from the imaging unit.</li> </ol> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>3</b> Reinstall the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer still printing blank pages?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Redistribute the toner in the imaging unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</li> <li><b>2</b> Firmly shake the imaging unit.</li> </ol> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>3</b> Reinstall the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer still printing blank pages?</p>	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer still printing blank pages?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

**Printer is printing solid black pages**



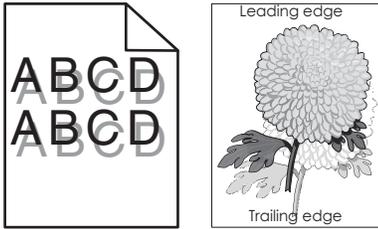
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <p><b>2</b> Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer printing solid black pages?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the printer printing solid black pages?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Repeating defects appear on prints



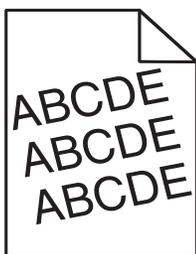
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the imaging unit if the distance between the defects is equal to any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 47.8 mm (1.88 in.)</li> <li>• 96.8 mm (3.81 in.)</li> <li>• 28.5 mm (1.12 in.)</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do repeating defects still appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Replace the fuser if the distance between the defects is equal to either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 94.25 mm (3.71 in.)</li> <li>• 95.2 mm (3.75 in.)</li> </ul> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do repeating defects still appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Shadow images appear on prints



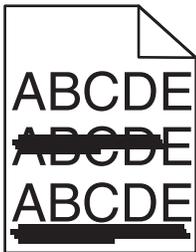
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> Load paper with the correct paper type and weight in the tray.</p> <p>Is paper with the correct paper type and weight loaded in the tray?</p>	Go to step 2.	Load paper with the correct paper type and weight in the tray.
<p><b>Step 2</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Is the tray set to the type and weight of the paper loaded?</p>	Go to step 3.	Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper type and weight specified in the tray settings.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</li> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do shadow images still appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b> Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do shadow images still appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Skewed print



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the print still skewed?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Check if you are printing on a paper that is supported by the tray.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Is the print still skewed?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

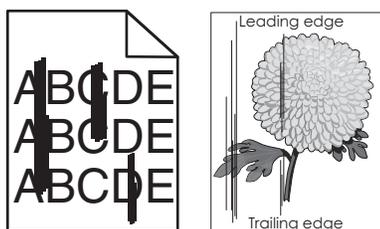
### Streaked horizontal lines appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the tray or feeder from Printing Preferences or the Print dialog.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the paper type and weight match the type and weight of the paper in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	Change the paper type and weight to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package. <b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</li> <li><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</li> </ul> <p>Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <p><b>2</b> Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

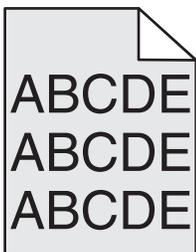
**Streaked vertical lines appear on prints**



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type, texture, and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>From the printer control panel, set the paper texture, type, and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Do the paper texture, type, and weight match the paper in the tray?</p>	Go to step 3.	<p>Do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify the paper texture, type, and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.</li> <li>Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper texture, type, and weight specified in the tray settings.</li> </ul>

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Load paper from a fresh package.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <p><b>2</b> Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> or your service representative.	The problem is solved.

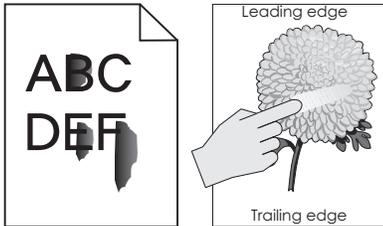
**Toner fog or background shading appears on prints**



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Reinstall the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</p> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <p><b>2</b> Install the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the toner fog or background shading disappear from the prints?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b>                      Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Did the toner fog or background shading disappear from the prints?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

**Toner rubs off**



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b>                      From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, check the paper type, texture, and weight.</p> <p>Do the paper type, texture, and weight match the paper loaded in the tray?</p>	Go to step 2.	Specify the paper type, texture, and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
<p><b>Step 2</b>                      Resend the print job.</p> <p>Does the toner still rub off?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

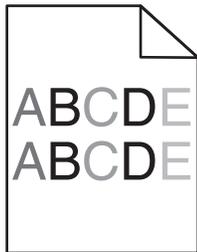
**Toner specks appear on prints**

Action	Yes	No
<p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do toner specks appear on prints?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Transparency print quality is poor

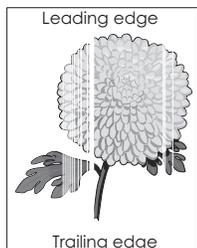
Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p>Is the paper type for the tray set to Transparency?</p>	Go to step 2.	Set the paper type to Transparency.
<p><b>Step 2</b>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Check if you are using a recommended type of transparency.</li> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> </p> <p>Is the print quality still poor?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Uneven print density



Action	Yes	No
<p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the print density uneven?</p>	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .	The problem is solved.

### Vertical voids appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Make sure your software program is using a correct fill pattern.</li> <li>b Resend the print job.</li> </ul> </p> <p>Do vertical voids appear on prints?</p>	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p><b>a</b> From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do vertical voids appear on prints?</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>
<p><b>Step 3</b></p> <p>Check if you are using a recommended type of paper.</p> <p><b>a</b> Load the specified tray or feeder with a recommended type of paper.</p> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do vertical voids appear on prints?</p>	<p>Go to step 4.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>
<p><b>Step 4</b></p> <p><b>a</b> Redistribute the toner in the imaging unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Remove the toner cartridge, and then the imaging unit.</li> <li><b>2</b> Firmly shake the imaging unit.</li> </ol> <p><b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not expose the imaging unit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>3</b> Reinstall the imaging unit, and then the cartridge.</li> </ol> <p><b>b</b> Resend the print job.</p> <p>Do vertical voids appear on prints?</p>	<p>Go to step 5.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>
<p><b>Step 5</b></p> <p>Replace the imaging unit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do vertical voids appear on prints?</p>	<p>Contact <a href="#">customer support</a>.</p>	<p>The problem is solved.</p>

## Solving home screen application problems

### An application error has occurred

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Check the system log for relevant details.</p> <p><b>a</b> Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.</p> <p>If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• View the IP address on the printer home screen.</li> <li>• Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages, and then locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.</p> <p><b>b</b> Click <b>Settings &gt; Apps &gt; Apps Management &gt; System tab &gt; Log</b>.</p> <p><b>c</b> From the Filter menu, select an application status.</p> <p><b>d</b> From the Application menu, select an application, and then click <b>Submit</b>.</p> <p>Does an error message appear in the log?</p>	Go to step 2.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Resolve the error.</p> <p>Is the application working now?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

### Embedded Web Server does not open

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 1</b></p> <p>Make sure the printer IP address is correct.</p> <p>View the printer IP address:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From the printer home screen</li> <li>• From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu</li> <li>• By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.</p> <p>Is the printer IP address correct?</p>	Go to step 2.	Type the correct printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser. <p><b>Note:</b> Depending on the network settings, you may need to type “<b>https://</b>” instead of “<b>http://</b>” before the printer IP address to access the Embedded Web Server.</p>
<p><b>Step 2</b></p> <p>Check if the printer is turned on.</p> <p>Is the printer turned on?</p>	Go to step 3.	Turn on the printer.

Action	Yes	No
<p><b>Step 3</b> Check if the network connection is working.</p> <p>Is the network connection working?</p>	Go to step 4.	Contact your system support person.
<p><b>Step 4</b> Make sure the cable connections to the printer and print server are secure. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.</p> <p>Are the cable connections to the printer and print server secure?</p>	Go to step 5.	Tighten the cable connection.
<p><b>Step 5</b> Temporarily disable the Web proxy servers.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Proxy servers may block or restrict you from accessing certain Web sites including the Embedded Web Server.</p> <p>Are the Web proxy servers disabled?</p>	Go to step 6.	Contact your system support person.
<p><b>Step 6</b> Access the Embedded Web Server again by typing the correct IP address in the address field.</p> <p>Did the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact <a href="#">customer support</a> .

## Contacting customer support

When you contact customer support, you will need to be able to describe the problem you are experiencing, the message on the printer display, and the troubleshooting steps you have already taken to find a solution.

You need to know your printer model type and serial number. For more information, see the label at the back of the printer. The serial number is also listed on the menu settings page.

Lexmark has various ways to help you solve your printing problem. Visit the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>, and then select one of the following:

<b>Tech Library</b>	You can browse our library of manuals, support documentation, drivers, and other downloads to help you solve common problems.
<b>E-mail</b>	You can send an e-mail to the Lexmark team, describing your problem. A service representative will respond and provide you with information to solve your problem.
<b>Live chat</b>	You can chat directly with a service representative. They can work with you to solve your printer problem or provide assistance through Assisted Service where the service representative can remotely connect to your computer through the Internet to troubleshoot problems, install updates, or complete other tasks to help you successfully use your Lexmark product.

Telephone support is also available. In the U.S. or Canada, call 1-800-539-6275. For other countries or regions, visit <http://support.lexmark.com>.

# Notices

## Product information

Product name:

Lexmark M5155, M5163 and M5170

Machine type:

4063

Model(s):

29E, 49E, 69E

## Edition notice

October 2014

**The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:**

LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, visit <http://support.lexmark.com>.

For information on supplies and downloads, visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

© 2014 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

## GOVERNMENT END USERS

The Software Program and any related documentation are "Commercial Items," as that term is defined in 48 C.F.R. 2.101, "Computer Software" and "Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, as applicable, the Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Software Documentation are licensed to the U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein.

## Trademarks

Lexmark, Lexmark with diamond design, MarkNet, and MarkVision are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

Mac and the Mac logo are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company’s designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of these companies:

Albertus	The Monotype Corporation plc
Antique Olive	Monsieur Marcel OLIVE
Apple-Chancery	Apple Computer, Inc.
Arial	The Monotype Corporation plc
CG Times	Based on Times New Roman under license from The Monotype Corporation plc, is a product of Agfa Corporation
Chicago	Apple Computer, Inc.
Clarendon	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Eurostile	Nebiolo
Geneva	Apple Computer, Inc.
GillSans	The Monotype Corporation plc
Helvetica	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Hoefler	Jonathan Hoefler Type Foundry
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Bookman	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Mona Lisa	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Zapf Chancery	International Typeface Corporation
Joanna	The Monotype Corporation plc
Marigold	Arthur Baker
Monaco	Apple Computer, Inc.
New York	Apple Computer, Inc.
Oxford	Arthur Baker
Palatino	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Stempel Garamond	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Taffy	Agfa Corporation
Times New Roman	The Monotype Corporation plc
Univers	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple, Inc.

## Licensing notices

All licensing notices associated with this product can be viewed from the root directory of the documentation CD.

## Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

**Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA	
Printing	57 (M5155); 58 (M5163, M5170)
Ready	32

Values are subject to change. See [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for current values.

## Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive



The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products.

If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for your local sales office phone number.

## India E-Waste notice

This product complies with the India E-Waste (Management and Handling) Rules, 2011, which prohibit use of lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium, polybrominated biphenyls, or polybrominated diphenyl ethers in concentrations exceeding 0.1% by weight and 0.01% by weight for cadmium, except for the exemption set in Schedule II of the Rules.

## Product disposal

Do not dispose of the printer or supplies in the same manner as normal household waste. Consult your local authorities for disposal and recycling options.

### Static sensitivity notice



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch in the areas near these symbols without first touching the metal frame of the printer.

### ENERGY STAR

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as configured when shipped by Lexmark.



### Temperature information

Ambient operating temperature	15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F)
Shipping temperature	-40 to 43.3°C (-40 to 110°F)
Storage temperature and relative humidity	1 to 35°C (34 to 95°F) 8 to 80% RH

### Laser notice

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR Chapter I, Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) laser that is nominally a 10 milliwatt gallium arsenide laser operating in the wavelength of 787-800 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

### Laser advisory label

A laser notice label may be affixed to this printer as shown:

DANGER - Invisible laser radiation when cartridges are removed and interlock defeated. Avoid exposure to laser beam.

PERIGO - Radiação a laser invisível será liberada se os cartuchos forem removidos e o lacre rompido. Evite a exposição aos feixes de laser.

Opasnost - Nevidljivo lasersko zračenje kada su kasete uklonjene i poništena sigurnosna veza. Izbjegavati izlaganje zracima.

NEBEZPEČÍ - Když jsou vyjmuty kazety a je odblokována pojistka, ze zařízení je vysíláno neviditelné laserové záření. Nevystavujte se působení laserového paprsku.

FARE - Usynlig laserstråling, når patroner fjernes, og spærreanordningen er slået fra. Undgå at blive udsat for laserstrålen.

GEVAAR - Onzichtbare laserstraling wanneer cartridges worden verwijderd en een vergrendeling wordt genegeerd. Voorkom blootstelling aan de laser.

DANGER - Rayonnements laser invisibles lors du retrait des cartouches et du déverrouillage des loquets. Eviter toute exposition au rayon laser.

VAARA - Näkymätöntä lasersäteilyä on varottava, kun värikasetit on poistettu ja lukitus on auki. Vältä lasersäteelle altistumista.

GEFAHR - Unsichtbare Laserstrahlung beim Herausnehmen von Druckkassetten und offener Sicherheitssperre. Laserstrahl meiden.

ΚΙΝΔΥΝΟΣ - Εκκυσση αόρατης ακτινοβολίας laser κατά την αφαίρεση των κασετών και την απασφάλιση της μανδάλωσης. Αποφεύγετε την έκθεση στην ακτινοβολία laser.

VESZÉLY - Nem látható lézersugárzás fordulhat elő a patronok eltávolításakor és a zárószervezet felbontásakor. Kerülje a lézersugárnak való kitettséget.

PERICOLO - Emissioni di radiazioni laser invisibili durante la rimozione delle cartucce e del blocco. Evitare l'esposizione al raggio laser.

FARE - Usynlig laserstråling når kassetene tas ut og sperren er satt ut av spill. Unngå eksponering for laserstrålen.

NIEBEZPIECZEŃSTWO - niewidzialne promieniowanie laserowe podczas usuwania kaset i blokady. Należy unikać naświetlenia promieniami lasera.

ОПАСНО! Невидимое лазерное излучение при извлеченных картриджах и снятии блокировки. Избегайте воздействия лазерных лучей.

Pozor - Nebezpečnostvo neviditeľného laserového žiarenia pri odobratých kazetách a odblokovanej poistke. Nevystavujte sa lúčom.

PELIGRO: Se producen radiaciones láser invisibles al extraer los cartuchos con el interbloqueo desactivado. Evite la exposición al haz de láser.

FARA - Osynlig laserstrålning när patroner tas ur och spärrmekanismen är upphävd. Undvik exponering för laserstrålen.

危険 - 当移除碳粉盒及互锁失效时会产生看不见的激光辐射, 请避免暴露在激光光束下。

危険 - 移除碳粉匣與安全連續開關失效時會產生看不見的雷射輻射。請避免暴露在雷射光束下。

危険 - カートリッジが取り外され、内部ロックが無効になると、見えないレーザー光が放射されます。このレーザー光に当たらないようにしてください。

## Power consumption

### Product power consumption

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

**Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Printing	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	700 (M5155); 800 (M5163); 830 (M5170)
Copy	The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.	N/A
Scan	The product is scanning hard-copy documents.	N/A
Ready	The product is waiting for a print job.	60 (Ready 1); 30 (Ready 2)
Sleep Mode	The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.	3.3 (M5155); 3.3 (M5163); 3.7 (M5170)
Hibernate	The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.	0.5
Off	The product is plugged into an electrical outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	0.1

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average.

Values are subject to change. See [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for current values.

### Sleep Mode

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called *Sleep Mode*. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the *Sleep Mode Timeout*.

Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):	30
---	----

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 120 minutes. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

### Hibernate Mode

This product is designed with an ultra-low power operating mode called *Hibernate mode*. When operating in Hibernate Mode, all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

The Hibernate mode can be entered in any of the following methods:

- Using the Hibernate Timeout
- Using the Schedule Power modes
- Using the Sleep/Hibernate button

Factory default Hibernate Timeout for this product in all countries or regions	3 days
--	--------

The amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it enters Hibernate mode can be modified between one hour and one month.

### Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the electrical outlet.

### Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to calculate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

## STATEMENT OF LIMITED WARRANTY FOR LEXMARK LASER PRINTERS, LEXMARK LED PRINTERS, AND LEXMARK MULTIFUNCTION LASER PRINTERS

### Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as "Remarketer."

## Limited warranty

Lexmark warrants that this product:

- Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts
- Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

## Limited warranty service

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed. Fuser Units, Transfer/Transport Units, Paper Feed items, if any, and any other items for which a Maintenance Kit is available are substantially consumed when the printer displays a "Life Warning" or "Scheduled Maintenance" message for such item.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location. You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

As part of your warranty service and/or replacement, Lexmark may update the firmware in your printer to the latest version. Firmware updates may modify printer settings and cause counterfeit and/or unauthorized products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces to stop working. Authorized use of genuine Lexmark products will not be impacted.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

## Extent of limited warranty

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

- Modification or unauthorized attachments
- Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user's guides, manuals, instructions or guidance
- Unsuitable physical or operating environment
- Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer
- Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle
- Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications
- Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts
- Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

**TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.**

### **Limitation of liability**

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. **IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** This is true even if you advise Lexmark or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

### **Additional rights**

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

### **Modular component notice**

This product may contain the following modular component(s):

Lexmark Regulatory Type/LEX-M01-005; FCC ID: IYLLEXM01005; Industry Canada IC: 2376A-M01005

## Patent acknowledgment

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) Cipher Suites for Transport Layer Security (TLS) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for TLS Elliptic Curve Cipher Suites with SHA-256/382 and AES Galois Counter Mode (GCM) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for TLS Suite B Profile for Transport Layer Security (TLS) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Addition of the Camellia Cipher Suites to Transport Layer Security (TLS) implemented in the product or service.

The use of certain patents in this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for AES-CCM ECC Cipher Suites for TLS implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for IKE and IKEv2 Authentication Using the Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Suite B Cryptographic Suites for IPsec implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Algorithms for Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1) implemented in the product or service.

## Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class B limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult your point of purchase or service representative for additional suggestions.

The manufacturer is not responsible for radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

**Note:** To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class B computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Any questions regarding this compliance information statement should be directed to:

Director of Lexmark Technology & Services  
Lexmark International, Inc.  
740 West New Circle Road  
Lexington, KY 40550  
(859) 232-3000

## Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

## Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

## European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 2009/125/EC, and 2011/65/EU on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, the ecodesign of energy-related products, and on the restrictions of use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY. A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950-1.

## Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains the following regulatory information pertaining to wireless products that contain transmitters, for example, but not limited to, wireless network cards or proximity card readers.

## Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

## Industry Canada (Canada)

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb).

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

## Industry Canada (Canada)

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb).

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

## Notice to Users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 1999/5/EC, and 2009/125/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and on the ecodesign of energy-related products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950-1.

Refer to the table at the end of the Notices section for further compliance information.

This product may be used in the countries indicated in the table below.

AT	BE	BG	CH	CY	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	HU	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	MT	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK			

Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΟ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.
Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Malti	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma dispożizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensky	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

## Model-specific information

The following information applies only to the M5170 printer model.

## Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class A limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

**Note:** To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class A computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

## Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

## Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe A est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

## European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 2011/65/EU on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, and on the restrictions of use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950-1.

## Radio interference notice

### Warning

This is a product that complies with the emission requirements of EN55022 Class A limits and immunity requirements of EN55024. This product is not intended to be used in residential/domestic environments.

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

## Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains the following regulatory information pertaining to wireless products that contain transmitters, for example, but not limited to, wireless network cards or proximity card readers.

## Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

## Industry Canada (Canada)

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb).

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

## Industry Canada (Canada)

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb).

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

## Notice to users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 1999/5/EC, and 2011/65/EU on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment, and on the restrictions of use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950-1.

Products equipped with 2.4GHz Wireless LAN option are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



Operation is allowed in all EU and EFTA countries, but is restricted to indoor use only.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product may be used in the countries indicated in the table below.

AT	BE	BG	CH	CY	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	HU	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	MT	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK			

Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΟ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.
Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Malti	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma dispożizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensky	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

# Index

## Numerics

- 2100-sheet tray
  - loading 57, 102
- 550-sheet tray
  - installing 28

## Symbols

- [x]-page jam, clear manual feeder [250] 227
- [x]-page jam, lift front cover to remove cartridge. [200–201] 218
- [x]-page jam, open tray [x]. [24x] 226
- [x]-page jam, open upper and lower rear door. [231–234] 222
- [x]-page jam, open upper rear door. [202] 221
- [x]-page jam, remove paper, open expander rear door. Leave paper in bin. [41y.xx] 232
- [x]-page jam, remove paper, open finisher rear door. Leave paper in bin. [451] 231
- [x]-page jam, remove paper, open mailbox rear door. Leave paper in bin. [43y.xx] 233
- [x]-page jam, remove paper, open stapler door. Leave paper in bin. [455–457] 228
- [x]-page jam, remove standard bin jam. [203] 224
- [x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [235–239] 224

## A

- accessing the Embedded Web Server 46, 91
- Active NIC menu 154
- adding hardware options
  - print driver 33
- adjusting printer display brightness 199
- adjusting Sleep mode 200
- adjusting toner darkness 70, 116
- administrator settings
  - Embedded Web Server 75, 121
- AppleTalk menu 159

- applications
  - home screen 47, 92
- attaching cables 31
- available internal options 11
- avoiding jams 135
- avoiding paper jams 214

## B

- Background and Idle Screen
  - using 47, 92
- Bin Setup menu 152
- buttons, printer control panel 42
- buttons, touch screen
  - using 45, 88

## C

- cables
  - Ethernet 31
  - USB 31
- canceling a print job
  - from a computer 75, 121
  - from the printer control panel 74, 121
- cannot open Embedded Web Server 286
- card stock
  - loading 63, 109
  - tips 131
- Cartridge low [88.xy] 235
- Cartridge nearly low [88.xy] 235
- Cartridge very low, [x] estimated pages remain [88.xy] 235
- Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [orientation] 235
- Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 235
- Change [paper source] to [paper size] load [orientation] 236
- Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size] load [orientation] 236
- Check tray [x] connection 236
- checking an unresponsive printer 252
- checking status of parts and supplies 77, 124
- checking the status of parts and supplies 77, 124
- checking the virtual display
  - using the Embedded Web Server 75, 121
- checking virtual display
  - using the Embedded Web Server 121
- cleaning
  - exterior of the printer 210
- cleaning the printer 210
- Close door or insert cartridge 236
- Close rear door 236
- Complex page, some data may not have printed [39] 237
- compressed images appear on prints 268
- confidential data
  - information on securing 83, 130
- confidential jobs
  - modifying print settings 76, 122
- confidential print jobs 72, 119
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 73, 120
  - printing from Windows 73, 120
- Confidential Print menu 169
- Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored [57] 237
- configuration information
  - wireless network 35
- configurations
  - printer 40, 84
- Configure MP menu 145
- configuring
  - multiple printers 76, 123
  - supply notifications, imaging unit 75, 122
  - supply notifications, maintenance kit 75, 122
  - supply notifications, toner cartridge 75, 122
- configuring port settings 38
- configuring supply notifications 75, 122
- connecting to a wireless network
  - using PBC, Push Button Configuration method 36
  - using PIN (Personal Identification Number) method 36

- using the Embedded Web Server 37
- using wireless setup wizard 36
- conservation settings
  - brightness, adjusting 199
  - conserving supplies 200
  - Eco-Mode 78, 124
  - Hibernate mode 79, 126
  - Quiet mode 78, 125
  - Sleep Mode 200
- conserving supplies 200
- contacting customer support 287
- control panel
  - indicator light 43
  - Sleep button light 43
- control panel, printer
  - indicator light 87
  - Sleep button light 87
- controller board
  - accessing 11
- creating custom name
  - paper type 68
- Custom Bin Names menu 151
- Custom Names menu 150
- custom paper type
  - assigning 115
- custom paper type name
  - assigning 69
  - creating 114
- Custom Type [x]
  - changing name 114
  - creating custom name 68
- Custom Types menu 150
- customer support
  - contacting 287

**D**

- Default Source menu 142
- Defective flash detected [51] 237
- device and network settings information
  - erasing 81, 128
- directory list
  - printing 74, 121
- Disk full 62 237
- Disk must be formatted for use in this device 237
- Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space. 237
- disk wiping 82, 129
- display troubleshooting
  - printer display is blank 254

- display, printer control panel 42
  - adjusting brightness 199
- disposing of printer hard disk 80, 127
- documents, printing
  - from Macintosh 70, 116
  - from Windows 70, 116

**E**

- Eco-Mode setting 78, 124
- Eco-Settings
  - about 48
  - understanding 93
- Edit Security Setups menu 167
- embedded solutions information
  - erasing 81, 128
- Embedded Web Server
  - accessing 46, 91
  - adjusting brightness 199
  - administrator settings 75, 121
  - checking the status of parts 77, 124
  - checking the status of supplies 77, 124
  - copying settings to other printers 76, 123
  - modifying confidential print settings 76, 122
  - networking settings 75, 121
  - problem accessing 286
- Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide
  - where to find 75, 83, 121, 130
- emission
- notices 290, 296, 297, 298, 300, 301, 302
- Empty the hole punch box 238
- emptying the hole punch box 211
- encrypting the printer hard disk 82, 129
- envelopes
  - loading 63, 109
  - tips on using 131
- environmental settings
  - conserving supplies 200
  - Eco-Mode 78, 124
  - Hibernate mode 79, 126
  - printer display brightness, adjusting 199
  - Quiet mode 78, 125
  - Sleep Mode 200

- Erase Temporary Data Files menu 169
- erasing hard disk memory 82, 129
- erasing non-volatile memory 81, 128
- erasing volatile memory 81, 128
- Error reading USB drive. Remove USB. 238
- Error reading USB hub. Remove hub. 238
- Ethernet network
  - preparing to set up for Ethernet printing 34
- Ethernet port 31
- Ethernet setup
  - preparing for an 34
- exporting a configuration
  - using the Embedded Web Server 49, 94
- exterior of the printer
  - cleaning 210

**F**

- factory defaults
  - restoring 79, 126
- FCC notices 296, 297, 300, 301
- finding more information about the printer 7
- finding printer IP address 46, 91
- finisher
  - finishing features 138
  - supported paper sizes 138
- finisher features 138
- Finishing menu 185
- firmware card 11
- flash drive
  - printing from 71, 117
- flash drives
  - supported file types 72, 118
- font sample list
  - printing 74, 120
- Forms and Favorites
  - setting up 48, 93

**G**

- General Settings menu 171
- green settings
  - Eco-Mode 78, 124
  - Hibernate mode 79, 126
  - Quiet mode 78, 125

**H**

- hardware options, adding
  - print driver 33
- held jobs 72, 119
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 73, 120
  - printing from Windows 73, 120
- Help menu 197
- Hibernate mode
  - using 79, 126
- hiding icons on the home screen 47, 92
- hole punch box
  - emptying 211
- Home button
  - printer control panel 42, 86
- home screen
  - buttons, understanding 43, 87
  - customizing 47, 92
  - hiding icons 47, 92
  - showing icons 47, 92
- home screen applications
  - configuring 47, 92
  - finding information 47, 92
- home screen buttons
  - understanding 43, 87
- HTML menu 196

**I**

- icons on the home screen
  - hiding 47, 92
  - showing 47, 92
- Image menu 197
- imaging unit
  - ordering 202
- Imaging unit low [84.xy] 238
- Imaging unit nearly low [84.xy] 238
- Imaging unit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [84.xy] 238
- importing a configuration
  - using the Embedded Web Server 49, 94
- Incompatible output bin [x] [59] 238
- Incompatible tray [x] [59] 239
- Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34] 239
- indicator light 86
  - printer control panel 42
- individual settings information
  - erasing 81, 128

- Insert hole punch box 239
- Insert staple cartridge 239
- Insert Tray [x] 239
- Install bin [x] 240
- Install Tray [x] 240
- installing an Internal Solutions Port 16
- installing an optional card 20
- installing options
  - order of installation 27
- installing printer 33
- installing printer hard disk 21
- Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37] 240
- Insufficient memory to collate job [37] 241
- Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35] 241
- Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37] 240
- Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37] 240
- internal options 11
- internal print server
  - troubleshooting 263
- Internal Solutions Port
  - changing port settings 38
  - installing 16
  - troubleshooting 264
- IP address of computer
  - finding 46, 91
- IP address, printer
  - finding 46, 91
- IPv6 menu 158

**J**

- jams
  - accessing 216
  - avoiding 214
  - understanding messages 216
- jams, clearing
  - behind rear door 221, 222
  - in duplex area 224
  - in finisher rear door 231
  - in mailbox rear door 233
  - in multipurpose feeder 227
  - in rear expander door 232
  - in standard bin 224
  - in staple finisher 228
  - in the tray 226
  - inside the printer 218

- Job Accounting menu 188

**K**

- keypad
  - printer control panel 42, 86

**L**

- labels, paper
  - tips 132
- letterhead
  - loading, 2100-sheet tray 57, 102
  - loading, multipurpose feeder 63, 109
  - loading, trays 50, 96
- linking trays 68, 69, 114, 115
- Load [paper source] with [custom string] [paper orientation] 241
- Load [paper source] with [custom type name] [paper orientation] 241
- Load [paper source] with [paper size] [paper orientation] 241
- Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation] 242
- Load manual feeder with [custom string] [paper orientation] 242
- Load manual feeder with [custom type name] [paper orientation] 242
- Load manual feeder with [paper size] [paper orientation] 242
- Load manual feeder with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation] 243
- Load staples 243
- loading
  - 2100-sheet tray 57, 102
  - card stock 63, 109
  - envelopes 63, 109
  - letterhead in 2100-sheet tray 57, 102
  - letterhead in multipurpose feeder 63, 109
  - letterhead in trays 50, 96
  - multipurpose feeder 63, 109
  - optional 250-sheet tray 50, 96
  - optional 550-sheet tray 50, 96
  - standard 550-sheet tray 50
  - standard tray 96
  - transparencies 63, 109
- lock, security 80, 127

**M**

maintenance kit  
   ordering 203  
 Maintenance kit low [80.xy] 243  
 Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy] 243  
 Maintenance kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [80.xy] 243  
 memory  
   types installed on printer 80, 127  
 memory card 11  
   installing 14  
 Memory full [38] 244  
 menu settings  
   loading on multiple printers 76, 123  
 menu settings page  
   printing 77, 123  
 menus  
   Active NIC 154  
   AppleTalk 159  
   Bin Setup 152  
   Confidential Print 169  
   Configure MP 145  
   Custom Bin Names 151  
   Custom Names 150  
   Custom Types 150  
   Default Source 142  
   Edit Security Setups 167  
   Erase Temporary Data Files 169  
   Finishing 185  
   General Settings 171  
   Help 197  
   HTML 196  
   Image 197  
   IPv6 158  
   Job Accounting 188  
   list of 141  
   Miscellaneous Security Settings 168  
   Network [x] 154  
   Network Card 156  
   Network Reports 156  
   Paper Loading 149  
   Paper Size/Type 142  
   Paper Texture 146  
   Paper Weight 147  
   Parallel [x] 161  
   PCL Emul 191  
   PDF 191

PostScript 191  
 PPDS 194  
 Print Settings 181  
 Quality 188  
 Reports 153  
 Security Audit Log 170  
 Serial [x] 163  
 Set Date/Time 170  
 Setup 183  
 SMTP Setup 166  
 Standard Network 154  
 Standard USB 160  
 Substitute Size 145  
 TCP/IP 156  
 Universal Setup 151  
 Utilities 190  
 Wireless 158  
 XPS 190  
 Miscellaneous Security Settings menu 168  
 mobile device  
   printing from 71, 118  
 moving the printer 9, 10, 211, 213  
 multipurpose feeder  
   loading 63, 109

**N**

Network [x] menu 154  
 Network [x] software error [54] 244  
 Network Card menu 156  
 Network Reports menu 156  
 network settings  
   Embedded Web Server 75, 121  
 network setup page  
   printing 77, 124  
 Networking Guide  
   where to find 75, 121  
 noise emission levels 290  
 noise, printer  
   reducing 78  
 Non-Lexmark [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy] 244  
 non-volatile memory 80, 127  
   erasing 81, 128  
 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52] 244  
 notices 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303  
 number of remaining pages  
   estimate 202

**O**

optional 250-sheet tray  
   loading 50, 96  
 optional 550-sheet tray  
   loading 50, 96  
 optional card  
   installing 20  
 options  
   550-sheet tray, installing 28  
   firmware cards 11  
   Internal Solutions Port, installing 16  
   memory card 11, 14  
   printer hard disk, installing 21  
   printer hard disk, removing 25  
 ordering  
   imaging unit 202  
   maintenance kit 203  
   staple cartridges 203  
 ordering supplies  
   toner cartridge 202

**P**

paper  
   characteristics 132  
   letterhead 134  
   preprinted forms 134  
   recycled 134  
   selecting 133  
   storing 132, 135  
   unacceptable 134  
   Universal size setting 50, 95  
   using recycled 199  
 Paper changes needed 245  
 paper characteristics 132  
 paper feed troubleshooting  
   message remains after jam is cleared 266  
 paper jams  
   avoiding 214  
 paper jams, clearing  
   behind rear door 221, 222  
   in duplex area 224  
   in finisher rear door 231  
   in mailbox rear door 233  
   in multipurpose feeder 227  
   in rear expander door 232  
   in standard bin 224  
   in staple finisher 228  
   in the tray 226  
   inside the printer 218

- Paper Loading menu 149
- paper size
  - setting 50, 95
- Paper Size/Type menu 142
- paper sizes
  - supported 136
- Paper Texture menu 146
- paper type
  - setting 50, 95
- paper types
  - supported 136
- Paper Weight menu 147
- paper weights
  - supported 136
- Parallel [x] menu 161
- Parallel port [x] disabled [56] 245
- parts
  - checking status 77, 124
  - checking, from printer control panel 77
  - checking, on the printer control panel 124
  - checking, using the Embedded Web Server 77, 124
  - using genuine Lexmark 202
- PCL Emul menu 191
- PDF menu 191
- Personal Identification Number method
  - using 36
- port settings
  - configuring 38
- PostScript menu 191
- PPDS menu 194
- preparing to set up the printer on an Ethernet network 34
- print driver
  - hardware options, adding 33
- print irregularities 272
- print job
  - canceling, from computer 75, 121
- print quality troubleshooting
  - blank pages 276
  - characters have jagged edges 267
  - clipped pages or images 267
  - compressed images appear on prints 268
  - gray background on prints 269
  - horizontal voids appear on prints 270
  - print irregularities 272
  - print is too dark 274
  - print is too light 275
  - printer is printing solid black pages 277
  - repeating defects appear on prints 278
  - shadow images appear on prints 279
  - skewed print 279
  - streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 280
  - streaked vertical lines 281
  - toner fog or background shading appears on prints 282
  - toner rubs off 283
  - toner specks appear on prints 283
  - transparency print quality is poor 284
  - uneven print density 284
  - white streaks 284
- Print Settings menu 181
- print troubleshooting
  - envelope seals when printing 255
  - error reading flash drive 255
  - held jobs do not print 254
  - incorrect characters print 256
  - incorrect margins on prints 271
  - jammed pages are not reprinted 265
  - job prints from wrong tray 256
  - job prints on wrong paper 256
  - jobs do not print 258
  - Large jobs do not collate 257
  - multiple-language PDF files do not print 257
  - paper curl 272
  - paper frequently jams 266
  - print job takes longer than expected 258
  - tray linking does not work 260
  - unexpected page breaks occur 261
- printer 33
  - configurations 40, 84
  - finishing features 138
  - minimum clearances 9, 10
  - models 40, 84
  - moving 9, 10, 211, 213
  - selecting a location 9, 10
  - shipping 213
- printer control panel
  - adjusting brightness 199
  - factory defaults, restoring 79, 126
  - indicator light 87
    - parts 42, 86
    - Sleep button light 87
      - using 42, 86
  - printer control panel, virtual display
    - using the Embedded Web Server 75
- Printer had to restart. Last job may be incomplete. 245
- printer hard disk
  - disposing of 80, 127
  - encrypting 82, 129
  - installing 21
  - removing 25
  - wiping 82, 129
- printer hard disk encryption 82, 129
- printer hard disk memory erasing 82, 129
- printer information
  - where to find 7
- printer IP address
  - finding 46, 91
- printer is printing blank pages 276
- printer messages
  - [x]-page jam, clear manual feeder [250] 227
  - [x]-page jam, lift front cover to remove cartridge. [200–201] 218
  - [x]-page jam, open tray [x]. [24x] 226
  - [x]-page jam, open upper and lower rear door. [231–234] 222
  - [x]-page jam, open upper rear door. [202] 221
  - [x]-page jam, remove paper, open expander rear door. Leave paper in bin. [41y.xx] 232
  - [x]-page jam, remove paper, open finisher rear door. Leave paper in bin. [451] 231
  - [x]-page jam, remove paper, open mailbox rear door. Leave paper in bin. [43y.xx] 233
  - [x]-page jam, remove paper, open stapler door. Leave paper in bin. [455–457] 228
  - [x]-page jam, remove standard bin jam. [203] 224

- [x]-page jam, remove tray 1 to clear duplex. [235–239] 224
- Cartridge low [88.xy] 235
- Cartridge nearly low [88.xy] 235
- Cartridge very low, [x] estimated pages remain [88.xy] 235
- Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [orientation] 235
- Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 235
- Change [paper source] to [paper size] load [orientation] 236
- Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size] load [orientation] 236
- Check tray [x] connection 236
- Close door or insert cartridge 236
- Close rear door 236
- Complex page, some data may not have printed [39] 237
- Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored [57] 237
- Defective flash detected [51] 237
- Disk full 62 237
- Disk must be formatted for use in this device 237
- Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space. 237
- Empty the hole punch box 238
- Error reading USB drive. Remove USB. 238
- Error reading USB hub. Remove hub. 238
- Imaging unit low [84.xy] 238
- Imaging unit nearly low [84.xy] 238
- Imaging unit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [84.xy] 238
- Incompatible output bin [x] [59] 238
- Incompatible tray [x] [59] 239
- Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34] 239
- Insert hole punch box 239
- Insert staple cartridge 239
- Insert Tray [x] 239
- Install bin [x] 240
- Install Tray [x] 240
- Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37] 240
- Insufficient memory to collate job [37] 241
- Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35] 241
- Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37] 240
- Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37] 240
- Load [paper source] with [custom string] [paper orientation] 241
- Load [paper source] with [custom type name] [paper orientation] 241
- Load [paper source] with [paper size] [paper orientation] 241
- Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation] 242
- Load manual feeder with [custom string] [paper orientation] 242
- Load manual feeder with [custom type name] [paper orientation] 242
- Load manual feeder with [paper size] [paper orientation] 242
- Load manual feeder with [paper type] [paper size] [paper orientation] 243
- Load staples 243
- Maintenance kit low [80.xy] 243
- Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy] 243
- Maintenance kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [80.xy] 243
- Memory full [38] 244
- Network [x] software error [54] 244
- Non-Lexmark [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy] 244
- Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52] 244
- Paper changes needed 245
- Parallel port [x] disabled [56] 245
- Printer had to restart. Last job may be incomplete. 245
- Reattach bin [x] 245
- Reattach bins [x] – [y] 246
- Reinstall missing or unresponsive cartridge [31.xy] 246
- Reinstall missing or unresponsive imaging unit [31.xy] 247
- Remove defective disk [61] 247
- Remove packaging material, [area name] 247
- Remove paper from [linked set bin name] 247
- Remove paper from all bins 247
- Remove paper from bin [x] 247
- Remove paper from standard output bin 247
- Replace cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy] 248
- Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy] 248
- Replace imaging unit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy] 248
- Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy] 248
- Replace missing or unresponsive fuser [31.xy] 246
- Replace unsupported cartridge [32.xy] 248
- Replace unsupported fuser [32.xy] 249
- Replace unsupported imaging unit [32.xy] 249
- Restore held jobs? 249
- Serial option [x] error [54] 249
- Serial port [x] disabled [56] 249
- Some held jobs were not restored 249
- Standard network software error [54] 250
- Standard USB port disabled [56] 250
- Supply needed to complete job 250
- Too many bins attached [58] 250
- Too many disks installed [58] 250
- Too many flash options installed [58] 251
- Too many trays attached [58] 251
- Tray [x] paper size unsupported 251
- Unformatted flash detected [53] 251
- Unsupported disk 251

- Unsupported option in slot [x] [55] 251
- Unsupported USB hub, please remove 238
- USB port [x] disabled [56] 252
- printer options troubleshooting
  - internal option is not detected 262
  - internal print server 263
  - Internal Solutions Port 264
  - tray problems 263
  - USB/parallel interface card 265
- printer options, troubleshooting
  - 2100-sheet tray problems 261
- printer problems, solving basic 252
- printer security
  - information on 83, 130
- printer setup
  - verifying 39
- printing
  - canceling, from printer control panel 74
  - canceling, from the printer control panel 121
  - directory list 74, 121
  - font sample list 74, 120
  - forms 69, 115
  - from a mobile device 71, 118
  - from flash drive 71, 117
  - from Macintosh 70, 116
  - from Windows 70, 116
  - menu settings page 77, 123
  - network setup page 77, 124
  - printing a directory list 74, 121
  - printing a document 70, 116
  - printing a font sample list 74, 120
  - printing a menu settings page 77, 123
  - printing a network setup page 77, 124
  - printing confidential and other held jobs
    - from a Macintosh computer 73, 120
    - from Windows 73, 120
  - printing forms 69, 115
  - printing from a flash drive 71, 117
  - printing from a mobile device 71, 118
  - printing slows down 259
  - publications
    - where to find 7

- Push Button Configuration method using 36

## Q

- Quality menu 188
- Quiet mode 78
  - using 125

## R

- Reattach bin [x] 245
- Reattach bins [x] – [y] 246
- recycled paper
  - using 134, 199
- recycling
  - Lexmark packaging 201
  - Lexmark products 201
  - toner cartridges 201
- reducing noise 78
- reducing printer noise 125
- Reinstall missing or unresponsive cartridge [31.xy] 246
- Reinstall missing or unresponsive imaging unit [31.xy] 247
- Remote Operator Panel
  - setting up 49, 94
- Remove defective disk [61] 247
- Remove packaging material, [area name] 247
- Remove paper from [linked set bin name] 247
- Remove paper from all bins 247
- Remove paper from bin [x] 247
- Remove paper from standard output bin 247
- removing printer hard disk 25
- repeat print jobs 72, 119
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 73, 120
  - printing from Windows 73, 120
- repeating defects appear on prints 278
- Replace cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy] 248
- Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy] 248
- Replace imaging unit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy] 248
- Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy] 248

- Replace missing or unresponsive fuser [31.xy] 246
- Replace unsupported cartridge [32.xy] 248
- Replace unsupported fuser [32.xy] 249
- Replace unsupported imaging unit [32.xy] 249
- replacing a staple cartridge 209
- replacing supplies
  - staple cartridge 209
- replacing the toner cartridge 204, 206
- Reports menu 153
- reserve print jobs 119
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 73, 120
  - printing from Windows 73, 120
- Restore held jobs? 249
- restoring factory default settings 79, 126

## S

- safety information 5, 6
- security
  - modifying confidential print settings 76, 122
- Security Audit Log menu 170
- security lock 80, 127
- security settings information
  - erasing 81, 128
- security Web page
  - where to find 83, 130
- selecting a location for the printer 9, 10
- selecting paper 133
- Serial [x] menu 163
- Serial option [x] error [54] 249
- Serial port [x] disabled [56] 249
- serial printing
  - setting up 38
- Set Date/Time menu 170
- setting
  - paper size 50, 95
  - paper type 50, 95
  - TCP/IP address 156
- setting the Universal paper size 50, 95
- setting up serial printing 38
- Setup menu 183
- shipping the printer 213

- showing icons on the home screen 47, 92
  - Sleep button
    - printer control panel 42, 86
  - Sleep Mode
    - adjusting 200
  - SMTP Setup menu 166
  - Some held jobs were not restored 249
  - standard 250-sheet tray
    - loading 96
  - standard 550-sheet tray
    - loading 50, 96
  - Standard Network menu 154
  - Standard network software error [54] 250
  - standard tray
    - loading 50, 96
  - Standard USB menu 160
  - Standard USB port disabled [56] 250
  - staple cartridge
    - replacing 209
  - staple cartridges
    - ordering 203
  - statement of volatility 80, 127
  - status of parts
    - checking 77, 124
  - status of supplies
    - checking 77, 124
  - Stop or Cancel button
    - printer control panel 42, 86
  - storing
    - paper 135
    - supplies 204
  - storing print jobs 72, 119
  - streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 280
  - streaked vertical lines appear on prints 281
  - streaks appear 284
  - Substitute Size menu 145
  - supplies
    - checking status 77, 124
    - checking, from printer control panel 77
    - checking, on the printer control panel 124
    - checking, using the Embedded Web Server 77, 124
    - conserving 200
    - storing 204
    - using genuine Lexmark 202
    - using recycled paper 199
  - supplies, ordering
    - imaging unit 202
    - maintenance kit 203
    - staple cartridges 203
    - toner cartridge 202
  - Supply needed to complete job 250
  - supply notifications
    - configuring 75, 122
  - supported flash drives 72, 118
  - supported paper sizes 136
  - supported paper types 136
  - supported paper weights 136
- ## T
- TCP/IP menu 156
  - telecommunication notices 298
  - tips
    - card stock 131
    - labels, paper 132
    - on using envelopes 131
    - transparencies 132
  - tips on using envelopes 131
  - toner cartridge
    - ordering 202
    - replacing 204, 206
  - toner cartridges
    - recycling 201
  - toner darkness
    - adjusting 70, 116
  - Too many bins attached [58] 250
  - Too many disks installed [58] 250
  - Too many flash options installed [58] 251
  - Too many trays attached [58] 251
  - touch screen
    - buttons, using 45, 88
  - transparencies
    - loading 63, 109
    - tips 132
  - Tray [x] paper size
    - unsupported 251
  - trays
    - linking 68, 69, 114, 115
    - unlinking 68, 69, 114, 115
  - troubleshooting
    - an application error has occurred 286
    - cannot open Embedded Web Server 286
    - checking an unresponsive printer 252
    - contacting customer support 287
    - solving basic printer problems 252
    - troubleshooting, display
      - printer display is blank 254
    - troubleshooting, paper feed
      - message remains after jam is cleared 266
    - troubleshooting, print
      - envelope seals when printing 255
      - error reading flash drive 255
      - held jobs do not print 254
      - incorrect characters print 256
      - incorrect margins on prints 271
      - jammed pages are not reprinted 265
      - job prints from wrong tray 256
      - job prints on wrong paper 256
      - jobs do not print 258
      - Large jobs do not collate 257
      - multiple-language PDF files do not print 257
      - paper curl 272
      - paper frequently jams 266
      - print job takes longer than expected 258
      - tray linking does not work 260
      - unexpected page breaks occur 261
    - troubleshooting, print quality
      - blank pages 276
      - characters have jagged edges 267
      - clipped pages or images 267
      - compressed images appear on prints 268
      - gray background on prints 269
      - horizontal voids appear on prints 270
      - print irregularities 272
      - print is too dark 274
      - print is too light 275
      - printer is printing solid black pages 277
      - repeating defects appear on prints 278
      - shadow images appear on prints 279
      - skewed print 279
      - streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 280

- streaked vertical lines 281
- toner fog or background shading
  - appears on prints 282
- toner rubs off 283
- toner specks appear on prints 283
- transparency print quality is poor 284
- uneven print density 284
- white streaks on a page 284
- troubleshooting, printer options
  - 2100-sheet tray problems 261
  - internal option is not detected 262
  - internal print server 263
  - Internal Solutions Port 264
  - tray problems 263
  - USB/parallel interface card 265
- troubleshooting, printing
  - printing slows down 259

## U

- understanding the home screen 43, 87
- uneven print density 284
- Unformatted flash detected [53] 251
- Universal Paper Size
  - setting 50
- Universal paper size
  - setting 95
- Universal Setup menu 151
- unlinking trays 68, 69, 114, 115
- Unsupported option in slot [x] [55] 251
- Unsupported USB hub, please remove 238
- USB port 31
  - printer control panel 42, 86
- USB port [x] disabled [56] 252
- USB/parallel interface card
  - troubleshooting 265
- User's Guide
  - using 7
- using Forms and Favorites 69, 115
- using Hibernate mode 79, 126
- using Quiet mode 125
- using recycled paper 199
- using the printer control panel 42, 86
- using the touch-screen buttons 45, 88
- Utilities menu 190

## V

- verify print jobs 72, 119
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 73, 120
  - printing from Windows 73, 120
- verifying printer setup 39
- vertical voids appear 284
- virtual display
  - checking, using Embedded Web Server 75, 121
- voids appear 284
- volatile memory 80, 127
  - erasing 81, 128
- volatility
  - statement of 80, 127

## W

- wiping the printer hard disk 82, 129
- Wireless menu 158
- wireless network
  - configuration information 35
- wireless network setup
  - using the Embedded Web Server 37
- wireless setup wizard
  - using 36

## X

- XPS menu 190